

**Your handy guide to
everyday words and expressions**

Portuguese Phrases

FOR

DUMMIES®

A Reference for the Rest of Us!®

- ✓ Quick and easy approach gives you language fundamentals upfront
- ✓ Words to Know sections help you find the right words fast
- ✓ Pronunciation key helps you talk the talk



Karen Keller
Brazilian Portuguese
language instructor

Portuguese Phrases FOR **DUMMIES®**

by Karen Keller



Wiley Publishing, Inc.

Portuguese Phrases For Dummies®

Published by
Wiley Publishing, Inc.
111 River St.
Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774
www.wiley.com

Copyright © 2007 by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400, fax 978-646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Legal Department, Wiley Publishing, Inc., 10475 Crosspoint Blvd., Indianapolis, IN 46256, 317-572-3447, fax 317-572-4355, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

Trademarks: Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 800-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit www.wiley.com/techsupport.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2006936747

ISBN: 978-0-470-03750-8

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

10/QY/RS/QW/IN

About the Author

Karen Keller is a journalist who lived and worked in São Paulo, Brazil, for three years. Before moving to Brazil, the California native taught Spanish at a New York City-based foreign-language-education Web site. Keller is also a published travel-guide writer. She currently lives in New Jersey, where she is a local newspaper reporter.

Publisher's Acknowledgments

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments through our Dummies online registration form located at www.dummies.com/register/.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

Acquisitions, Editorial, and Media Development

Compiler:

Laura Peterson-
Nussbaum

Project Editor:

Elizabeth Kuball

Acquisitions Editor:

Stacy Kennedy

Technical Editor:

Fernanda Habermann

Editorial Manager:

Michelle Hacker

Consumer Editorial Supervisor and Reprint Editor:

Carmen Krikorian

Editorial Assistants:

Erin Calligan,
David Lutton

Cartoons: Rich Tennant,

www.the5thwave.com

Composition

Project Coordinator:

Patrick Redmond

Layout and Graphics:

Stephanie D. Jumper,
Erin Zeltner

Proofreaders:

Mildred Rosenzweig

Indexer: Stephen Ingle

Publishing and Editorial for Consumer Dummies

Diane Graves Steele, Vice President and Publisher,
Consumer Dummies

Joyce Pepple, Acquisitions Director, Consumer Dummies

Kristin A. Cocks, Product Development Director,
Consumer Dummies

Michael Spring, Vice President and Publisher, Travel

Kelly Regan, Editorial Director, Travel

Publishing for Technology Dummies

Andy Cummings, Vice President and Publisher, Dummies
Technology/General User

Composition Services

Gerry Fahey, Vice President of Production Services

Debbie Stailey, Director of Composition Services

Table of Contents

Introduction 1

About This Book.....	2
Conventions Used in This Book	2
Foolish Assumptions	3
Icons Used in This Book.....	4
Where to Go from Here.....	4

Chapter 1: Say It How? Speaking Portuguese. 5

Exploring the Roots of Portuguese	6
Reciting Your ABCs	8
Conquering Consonants.....	9
The letter C	10
The letter D	10
The letter G	11
The letter H	11
The letter J	12
The letter L.....	12
The letters M and N	12
The letter Q	13
The letter R	13
The letter S.....	14
The letter T	14
The letter W	14
The letter X	15
Exercising Your Jowls with Vowels	15
The letters A and Ã	15
The letters E and Ê.....	16
The letter I.....	16
The letters O and Ô.....	17
The letter U	17

Chapter 2: Grammar on a Diet: Just the Basics 19

Constructing Simple Sentences.....	19
Nouns	20
Adjectives.....	20
Articles.....	21
Pronouns	22
Verbs	23

The Simple Tenses: Present, Past, and Future	24
Present tense	25
Past tense	27
Future tense	28
Conjugating the tenses	29
Connecting It All Together	32
Making Contractions: It's a Cinch!	33
To Me, to You: Indirect Objects	34
Commanding an Audience	35
Getting Possessive	35

Chapter 3: Numerical Gumbo:

Counting of All Kinds 39

Numbers to Know: When Everything Counts.....	39
The Big Countdown: Ordinal Numbers	41
Telling Time	42
Monday, Tuesday: Weekdays.....	44
Tracking the Calendar: Months and Dates.....	46
Naming the months.....	46
Picking a date.....	47
Money, Money, Money	48
Currency and prices.....	49
Getting money from banks and ATMs.....	50
Measuring Distances and Other Stuff	52

Chapter 4: Making New Friends and

Enjoying Small Talk 55

A Few Ways to Say Hello and Goodbye	56
Introducing Yourself	58
First Names, Last Names, and Nicknames	59
Knowing Who, What, and Where	61
“Where Are You From?”	62
Describing the World around You.....	66
Describing permanent qualities: Ser.....	66
Describing temporary qualities: Estar.....	70
Speaking about Speaking	71
The Good, the Bad, and the Humid: Weather.....	73
Figuring Out Family Connections	75
Giving Out Your Contact Information	76

Chapter 5: Enjoying a Drink and a Snack (or Meal!) 79

Bom Appetite! Enjoy Your Meal!	79
At the Restaurant: Trying Local Foods.....	81
Ordering at a restaurant	82
Ordering a drink	85
First foods up: Salads and condiments	86
On to the main course	88
Basking in Brazilian barbeque	89
Doing dessert	90
Paying the bill	91

Chapter 6: Shop 'Til You Drop 95

Finding Places to Shop	95
Out for the Perfect Outfit	96
Skirts and shirts: Which to choose	97
Trying it on.....	99
Exploring Brazilian Treasures	101
Shopping for Food and Necessities	
at the Market	103
Getting some practical items	103
Shopping at the outdoor market	104
Making Comparisons and Expressing Opinions.....	105
Paying for Your Purchases	106

Chapter 7: Making Leisure a Top Priority. 109

Talking about Going Out.....	110
Inviting someone and being invited	110
Asking what the place or event is like	111
Asking People What They Like to Do	113
Taking in Brazil's Musical Culture.....	114
Playing an instrument.....	114
Dancing around and singing out loud.....	116
Exploring Carnaval in Brazil	117
Exploring Art Galleries and Museums	118
Going to the Movies	119
Hanging Out at the Beach	120
What to take to the beach	121
Talking about beach safety	123
Expressing beauty: "It's so beautiful!"	124
Getting Out for a Walk (or a Hike).....	125
Playing Soccer — Brazil's National Pastime	127
Falling in Love — in Portuguese.....	128

Chapter 8: When You Gotta Work 131

Picking Up the Phone	131
Saying hello and goodbye	132
Making a call	133
Dealing with verbal mush.....	135
Talking in the past	137
Talking about Work	138
Dealing with Computers.....	142

Chapter 9: I Get Around: Transportation 145

On the Move: Transportation	146
Making a plane reservation.....	146
Taking buses	150
Hailing táxis.....	150
Renting a car	152
Onde? Where? The Question for Going Places.....	154
Understanding Spatial Directions	157
Navigating Cityscapes	159
Over Here, Over There	162
How Far? Perto ou longe?	163

Chapter 10: Finding a Place to Lay**Your Weary Head 165**

Finding a Place to Live.....	165
Checking Out the Hotel or Pousada	167
Deciding where to stay	167
Making reservations.....	169
Checking in and checking out:	
Registration procedures	170
Talking about Sleep.....	171

Chapter 11: Dealing with Emergencies 175

Stick 'em Up: What to Say If You're Robbed	176
Asking for and receiving help	176
Reporting a problem to the police.....	178
Handling Health Emergencies.....	179
Getting sick	180
Handling broken bones and other injuries	183
Discussing Legal Problems	185

Chapter 12: Ten Favorite Brazilian Portuguese**Expressions 187**

Que saudade!	187
Fala sério!	187
. . . pra caramba!.....	188

Lindo maravilhoso!	188
É mesmo?	189
Um beijo! or Um abraço!.....	189
Imagina!	189
Pois não?	190
Com certeza!	190
Fique tranquilo	190

Chapter 13: Ten Phrases That Make You

Sound Like a Local 191

Né?	191
Tá	192
Ah é?	192
Então.....	192
Sabe?.....	192
Meio	193
Ou seja/E tal.....	193
Cê Instead of Você.....	193
Pra Instead of Para a.....	194
Tô instead of Estou	194

Index 195

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant



"Is there an easy phrase in Portuguese for removing a squid from a cowboy hat that won't make me look like a tourist?"

Introduction



The world is shrinking. Communication technology is getting faster and faster, making it easier to contact people in what used to be exotic, faraway lands. Air travel has gotten a lot cheaper, too, so visiting these places has never been simpler. Experiencing **um pouco** (oong *poh*-koo; a little) of a new language is a great way to familiarize yourself with a region of the world or specific country. Not only does it allow you to communicate verbally, but knowing new words opens the door to understanding the specific culture itself.

If you're curious about language and want to know how to ask someone's name, ask for directions in a city, or talk about what your interests are, you've come to the right place. I'm not promising fluency here, but this book provides a great start.

This book tells you about the language spoken in Brazil. Thanks to Brazil's huge population — around 170 million or so — Portuguese is the fifth-most-spoken language in the world. (Flip ahead to Chapter 1 to read about which other countries in the world speak Portuguese.)

Brazilian Portuguese is specific because the accent and some basic words are unique to Brazil. And the country itself is a pretty popular destination these days, with its earned reputation as a land of fun-loving, generous people.

A bonus to knowing Brazilian Portuguese is that it can help you to understand a little French, Spanish, and Italian, too. They're all Romance languages, which means many words among these languages sound similar.

Brazilian Portuguese is very lyrical. The sounds can be difficult to make for nonnative speakers, but speaking Portuguese is fun after you get into it. I advise you to treat yourself while you're reading the book: Buy some Brazilian music. You'll fall in love with the sounds, and the background music adds great ambience.

About This Book

Here's the good news: This book isn't a class you have to drag yourself to. It's a reference book, so use it at your leisure. You're the boss. You may choose to just leaf through, glancing only at chapters and pages that grab your attention. Or you can read the whole thing from start to finish. (From finish to start is okay, too — no one's looking.)

The first few chapters may be helpful to read first, though, because they explain some basic information about pronunciation and explain words that appear throughout the book.

Conventions Used in This Book

To make the book easy to read and understand, I've set up a few stylistic rules:

- ✓ Web addresses appear in `monofont`.
- ✓ Portuguese terms are set in **boldface** to make them stand out.
- ✓ Pronunciations and definitions, which are shown in parentheses, follow the terms the first time they appear in a section.
- ✓ Within the pronunciation, the part of the word that's stressed is shown in *italics*.
- ✓ Knowing key words and phrases is important in the quest to speak a new language. I collect important words and put them in a special blackboard-shaped "Words to Know" box.

- ✓ Verb conjugations (lists that show you the forms of a verb) are given in tables in this order: the *I* form, the *you* form, the *he/she* form, the *we* form, and the *they* form. Pronunciations follow in a second column.

Here's an example of a conjugation chart for the word **ser** (seh; to be). Because the subjects always come in the same order, you can see that words in this chart mean *I am*, *you are*, *he/she is*, *we are*, and *they are*.

Conjugation	Pronunciation
eu sou	eh-ooh soh
você é	voh-seh eh
ele/ela	eh-lee/eh-la eh
nós somos	nohz soh-mooz
eles/elas são	eh-leez/eh-lahz sah-oooh

Foolish Assumptions

To write this book, I had to imagine who my readers would be. Yes, you! I think if you've picked up this book, you're probably a pretty open-minded person who enjoys learning. That's excellent. Because the first step to absorbing new information is wanting to absorb it.

Here are some other things I'm imagining about you:

- ✓ You don't want to memorize long lists of vocabulary to know Portuguese.
- ✓ You want to get your feet wet in Portuguese while having fun at the same time.
- ✓ You're interested in learning about Brazilian culture as well as its language.
- ✓ You're not looking for a book to make you fluent in Portuguese but one that instead gives you bite-size information that provides a solid base to understanding the language.

Icons Used in This Book

Drawings and symbols always liven things up a bit, don't they? Here are some icons that point you to important information:



This icon shows you where you can find some fascinating tidbits that highlight either a linguistic aspect or give travel tips. Tips can save you time and frustration.



This handy icon pops up whenever you run across a bit of information that you really should remember after you close the book, whether it's about the Portuguese language or Brazil in general.



Languages are full of quirks that may trip you up if you're not prepared for them. This icon points to discussions of these weird grammar rules.



The "Cultural Wisdom" snippets help give insight into Brazilian culture.

Where to Go from Here

When you have a spare moment, pop open the book. All you need is a curious mind and the openness to learn about Brazil. Above all, don't think of reading the book as a chore. It's meant to be relaxing and enjoyable.

Feel free to complement this book with other activities that enhance your knowledge of Portuguese, like entering a Portuguese-language chat room on the Internet or having Brazilian music on in the background so you can hear the sounds of the language.

Oh, and **boa sorte** (*boh-ah soh-chee*; good luck)!

Chapter 1

Say It How? Speaking Portuguese

In This Chapter

- ▶ Recognizing what English and Portuguese have in common
 - ▶ Spell it out: Saying the alphabet
 - ▶ Looking at vowels and consonants: Basic Portuguese sounds
-

Believe it or not, the Portuguese language comes in different versions. Pronunciation of Brazilian Portuguese and Portuguese from Portugal, say, is totally different. Some Brazilian tourists in Portugal report that they don't understand a word! I think it's a little more of a stretch than the differences between American and British English, just to give you an idea. But if a group of people from Texas, South Africa, and Scotland got together, they'd probably scratch their heads when trying to understand each other, too!

Written Portuguese, on the other hand, is very standard, especially when it's in a newspaper or some formal publication that doesn't use slang. A Brazilian can understand a Portuguese newspaper or read the works of Portugal's Nobel Prize-winning author José Saramago, no problem.

In this book, I focus on Brazilian Portuguese, as opposed to the Portuguese spoken in Portugal and countries in Africa — Cape Verde (islands off northwestern Africa), Mozambique (on the coast of southeast Africa), Guinea-Bissau (in western Africa), Angola (in southwestern Africa), and São Tomé and Príncipe (islands off western Africa).

Exploring the Roots of Portuguese

The beautiful Portuguese language belongs to a linguistic family known as the Romance languages. Back when the Roman Empire was around, Rome was in the center of a wide swath of Europe, northern Africa, and parts of Asia. With Rome's influence came its language — Latin.

And the closer a place was to Rome, the more likely it was to absorb Latin into its language. This was the case with Portugal — where the Portuguese language originates — as well as with places like France, Spain, and even Romania.

So how did Portuguese get all the way to Brazil? A Portuguese conquistador named Pedro Álvares Cabral landed in modern-day Brazil on April 22, 1500, and is the person credited for having “discovered” Brazil. Many indigenous people were already living in the area, of course, many of whom spoke a language that's part of a language family today called **Tupi-Guarani** (too-pee gwah-dah-nee).

Brazilian Portuguese uses some Tupi-Guarani words. Mostly the words appear as names of towns in Brazil — for example, **Ubatuba** (ooh-bah-too-bah) is a pretty beach town in São Paulo state (it's nicknamed **Uba-Chuva** because **chuva** [*shoo-vah*] means *rain* and it rains there a lot!). Tupi-Guarani words also name native plants and animals. “Armadillo,” for example, is **tatu** (tah-too). After you get used to speaking Portuguese, telling whether a word is Latin-based or Tupi-Guarani-based is pretty easy.

Still other words in Brazilian Portuguese are based on African languages, from the vast influence that African slaves had on creating modern-day Brazil and its culture.

What you may not realize is that the English language has a lot of Latin influence. Linguists consider English to be a Germanic language, and it technically is. But due to the on-and-off French occupations of the British Isles, some of those French (Latin-based) words rubbed off on English. Some people say as much as 40 percent of English is Latin-based.

That's great news for you. It means many Portuguese words have the same root as English words. The *root* of a word is usually the middle of the word — those few sounds that really define what the word means. Some examples of Portuguese words that resemble English include **experimento** (eh-speh-dee-men-toh; experiment), **presidente** (pdeh-zee-dang-chee; president), **economia** (eh-koh-noh-mee-ah; economy), **decisão** (ah deh-see-zah-ooh; decision), **computador** (kom-poo-tah-doh; computer), **liberdade** (lee-beh-dah-jee; liberty), and **banana** (bah-nah-nah). And that's only to name a few!

Another benefit: **O português** (ooh poh-too-geh-z; Portuguese), like all Latin languages, uses the English alphabet. Some funny accent marks appear on some of the vowels, but they just add to the mystique of Portuguese. Learning Portuguese isn't the same as learning Japanese or Arabic, which use totally different alphabets.

Finally, due to the influence the United States has had on the world recently — in some ways greater than Rome's ancient influence — many English words are used commonly in Portuguese, with no adaptation in the way they're written. These words include modern-technology words like **e-mail** (ee-may-oh) and also basic words like **shopping** (shoh-ping) or **show** (shoh; show/performance).

Reciting Your ABCs

Brazilian Portuguese sounds very strange at first. I myself thought it sounded Russian, back when I didn't understand a **palavra** (pah-lahv-dah; word)! A few of the sounds are a little hard to imitate, because people don't use them in English. But Brazilians often understand you even if you don't say words perfectly. Many think a foreign **sotaque** (soh-tah-kee; accent) is charming, so don't worry about it.

But the way the sounds correspond to the written letters is very systematic in Brazilian Portuguese — more so than in English. After you get used to the way a letter or combination of letters sounds, you get the hang of pronunciations pretty quickly. There are few surprises in a **pronúncia** (ah pdoh-noon-see-ah; pronunciation) after you get the basics down.

At the beginning of this chapter, did you notice how the pronunciation is shown in parentheses after the Portuguese word? That's how this book shows the pronunciation of all new words. The italicized part is where you put the emphasis on the word. In “Words to Know” lists, the part you emphasize is underlined rather than italicized.

Are you ready to learn the basics of **português**? You can start with the alphabet. Practice spelling out your name:

- ✓ **a** (ah)
- ✓ **b** (beh)
- ✓ **c** (seh)
- ✓ **d** (deh)
- ✓ **e** (eh)
- ✓ **f** (eh-fee)
- ✓ **g** (zheh)
- ✓ **h** (ah-gah)
- ✓ **i** (ee)

- ✓ **j** (*zhoh-tah*)
- ✓ **k** (*kah*)
- ✓ **l** (*eh-lee*)
- ✓ **m** (*eh-mee*)
- ✓ **n** (*eh-nee*)
- ✓ **o** (*awe*)
- ✓ **p** (*peh*)
- ✓ **q** (*keh*)
- ✓ **r** (*eh-hee*)
- ✓ **s** (*eh-see*)
- ✓ **t** (*teh*)
- ✓ **u** (*ooh*)
- ✓ **v** (*veh*)
- ✓ **w** (*dah-blee-ooh*)
- ✓ **x** (*sheez*)
- ✓ **y** (*eep-see-long*)
- ✓ **z** (*zeh*)

When the book uses the sound *zh* as part of the phonetic transcription (the pronunciation guide in parentheses), think of the sound in Hungarian actress Zsa-Zsa Gabor's name. That's the *zh* sound I'm talking about.

Conquering Consonants

Getting through this book will be a cinch after you go through the basic pronunciation guide in this section. Skipping the guide is okay, too — you can get the gist by reading aloud the pronunciations of words in other chapters. But if you want to get a general idea of how to pronounce words that don't show up in this book, this is a great place to begin. I start with the consonants first — you know, all those letters in the alphabet that aren't vowels.

The most hilarious aspect of Brazilian Portuguese pronunciation occurs when a word ends in a consonant. In most cases, these are foreign (and mostly English) words that Brazilians have adopted. They add an *ee* sound to the end of the word when there isn't one. Here are some examples: **club** (*kloo-bee*); **laptop** (*lahp-ee-top-ee*); **hip-hop** (*heep-ee-hoh-pee*); **rap** (*hah-pee*); and **rock** (*hoh-kee*).

Most consonants in Brazilian Portuguese have the same sound as in English. In the following sections, I go over the exceptions.

The letter C

A *c* that begins a word sounds usually like a *k*.

✓ **casa** (*kah-zah*; house)

✓ **café** (*kah-feh*; coffee)

If the *c* has a hook-shaped mark under it, like this — *ç* — it makes an *s* sound.

✓ **serviço** (*seh-vee-soo*; service)

✓ **França** (*fdahn-sah*; France)

The most common appearance of what Brazilians call the **c-cedilha** (*seh seh-deel-yah*; *ç*/cedilla) is at the end of a word, followed by **-ão**. It's the Brazilian equivalent of the English *-tion* ending.

✓ **promoção** (*pdoh-moh-sah-ooh*; sale/discount/sales promotion)

✓ **evolução** (*eh-voh-loo-sah-ooh*; evolution)

The letter D

If the word begins with a *d*, the sound is usually a hard *d*, like in English.

✓ **dançar** (*dahn-sah*; to dance)

✓ **data** (*dah-tah*; date)

The word **de** (jee), which means *of*, is an exception.

If the *d* comes in the middle of a word, before a vowel, it can have either a hard *d* sound or a *j* sound — like in the English word *jelly*.

- ✓ **modelo** (moh-deh-loh; model)
- ✓ **estado** (eh-stah-doh; state)
- ✓ **advogado** (ahj-voh-gah-doh; lawyer)
- ✓ **pedir** (peh-jee; to ask for)
- ✓ **liberdade** (lee-beh-dah-jee; freedom)

The letter G

The *g* in Portuguese usually is a hard *g*, like in the English word *go*.

- ✓ **gato** (gah-toh; cat)
- ✓ **governo** (goh-veh-noh; government)
- ✓ **segundo** (seh-goona-doh; second)

But it takes a *zh* sound, as in the famous Zsa-Zsa Gabor, when followed by an *e* or an *i*.

- ✓ **gente** (zhang-chee; people)
- ✓ **biologia** (bee-oh-loh-zhee-ah; biology)

The letter H

The Brazilian Portuguese *h* is one of the most versatile consonants around. If the word begins with an *h*, the letter is silent.

- ✓ **honesto** (oh-neh-stoh; honest)
- ✓ **hora** (oh-dah; hour)

If the *h* follows an *l* (*lh*) or an *n* (*nh*), the *h* sounds like a *y*.

- ✓ **maravilhoso** (mah-dah-veel-yoh-zoo; marvellous/amazing)
- ✓ **palhaço** (pahl-yah-soh; clown)
- ✓ **companhia** (kohm-pahn-yee-ah; company)
- ✓ **Espanha** (eh-spahn-yah; Spain)

The letter J

The *j* in Portuguese sounds like the *zh* in Zsa-Zsa.

- ✓ **julho** (zhool-yoh; July)
- ✓ **Jorge** (zhoh-zhee; George)
- ✓ **loja** (loh-zhah; store)
- ✓ **joelho** (zhoh-el-yoh; knee)

The letter L

The *l* in Portuguese normally sounds like the *l* in English.

- ✓ **líder** (lee-deh; leader)
- ✓ **gelo** (zheh-loo; ice)

But if it comes at the end of a word, the *l* sounds like *ooh*.

- ✓ **mil** (mee-ooh; one thousand)
- ✓ **Natal** (nah-tah-ooh; Christmas)

The letters M and N

The *m* and *n* in Portuguese generally sound like *m* and *n* in English.

- ✓ **mel** (meh-ooh; honey)
- ✓ **medo** (meh-doo; fear)
- ✓ **janela** (zhah-neh-lah; window)
- ✓ **não** (nah-ooh; no)

But at the end of a word, an *m* or *n* takes on an *ng* sound.

- ✓ **homem** (*oh-mang*; man)
- ✓ **cem** (*sang*; one hundred)

The letter Q

The *q* in Portuguese has a *k* sound.

- ✓ **quilo** (*kee-loo*; kilo)
- ✓ **quilômetro** (*kee-loh-meh-tdoh*; kilometer)

The letter R

If the word begins or ends with an *r*, the *r* sounds like an *h*.

- ✓ **Roberto** (*hoh-beh-too*; Robert)
- ✓ **rosa** (*hoh-zah*; pink)

If the *r* comes in the middle of a word, on the accented syllable, it sounds like an even stronger *h*. In the words **porta** and **carta** that follow, push air out of your mouth as you say the *h*. It's a breathy *h*, not a guttural sound like you'd hear in Hebrew or German.

- ✓ **porta** (*poh-tah*; door)
- ✓ **carta** (*kah-tah*; letter)

If the *r* comes in the middle of a word, on an unaccented syllable, it sounds like a soft *d*. Feel what your mouth does when you read the pronunciation for **Brasil**. The way you say the *d* in *bdah* is how you should say it in the *dah* of *koh-dah-sah-ooh*, too. It's not a hard *d* like in English.

- ✓ **Brasil** (*bdah-zeeh-ooh*; Brazil)
- ✓ **coração** (*koh-dah-sah-ooh*; heart)

If a word has two *rs* (*rr*), they make an *h* sound, as in **burro** (*boo-hoh*; dumb).

If the *r* comes at the end of a word, it's silent.

- ✓ **caminhar** (kah-ming-yah; to walk)
- ✓ **gostar** (goh-stah; to like)

The letter S

The *s* is the same as the English *s*, except it becomes a *z* sound at the end of a word.

- ✓ **olhos** (ohl-yooz; eyes)
- ✓ **dedos** (deh-dooz; fingers)

The letter T

The *t* in Portuguese has a soft *t* sound in general. In English, you don't use the soft *t* sound very often. Say *ta, ta, ta* in a quiet voice, as if you're marking a rhythm. That's the soft *t* of Portuguese.

- ✓ **motocicleta** (moh-too-see-kleh-tah; motorcycle)
- ✓ **atuar** (ah-too-ah; to act)
- ✓ **Tailândia** (tah-ee-lahn-jee-ah; Thailand)

But *t* sounds like *ch* when followed by an *e* or an *i*.

- ✓ **passaporte** (pah-sah-poh-chee; passport)
- ✓ **forte** (foh-chee; strong)
- ✓ **notícia** (noh-chee-see-ah; news)
- ✓ **time** (chee-mee; team)

The letter W

The *w* doesn't naturally occur in Portuguese, but when it does, it sounds like a *v*. The only places you really see a *w* is in someone's name.

- ✓ **Wanderlei** (vahn-deh-lay)
- ✓ **Wanessa** (vah-neh-sah)

The letter *X*

The *x* generally has a *sh* sound in Portuguese.

- ✓ **axé** (ah-sheh; a popular Brazilian type of dance)
- ✓ **lixo** (lee-shoo; garbage)
- ✓ **taxa** (tah-shah; rate)
- ✓ **bruxa** (bdoo-shah; witch)

But it can also have a *ks* sound, like in English: **tóxico** (tohk-see-koh; toxic).

Exercising Your Jowls with Vowels

In this section, I go over all five vowels in Portuguese, including the ones with the weird accents on top of them.

The letters *A* and *Ã*

The *a* normally has an *ah* sound.

- ✓ **amigo** (ah-mee-goo; friend)
- ✓ **ajuda** (ah-zhoo-dah; help)
- ✓ **Tatiana** (tah-chee-ah-nah)

If the *a* has a squiggly mark, or **til** (chee-ooh; ~/tilde), on top of it (*ã*), the letter makes a nasal sound. Instead of opening your mouth to say *a*, as in the English word *at*, try closing your mouth almost completely while you make the same sound. Do you hear that? It becomes more of an *uh* than an *ah*. Then try to open your mouth (making the same sound) without bringing your lips farther apart. And voilà! You have the *ã* sound!

The *ã* is a very common sound in Brazilian Portuguese. But to be honest, I took more than a year to be able to say it like a Brazilian. Don't sweat it — most Brazilians will probably understand you either way.

The *ã* occasionally comes at the end of a word.

- ✓ **maçã** (mah-sah; apple)
- ✓ **Maracanã** (mah-dah-kah-nah; a soccer stadium in Rio)

However, *ã* is usually followed by an *o* (*ão*). Together, these letters make an *ah-oo* sound. But say it fast, and you say *Ow!* like you've hurt yourself. Brazilians say the *ã* like the English *ow*, only with the nasal sound you just practiced.

- ✓ **não** (nah-oo; no)
- ✓ **informação** (een-foh-mah-sah-oo; information)

The letters *E* and *Ê*

In general, the *e* sounds like *eh*, as in *egg* or *ten*.

- ✓ **elefante** (eh-leh-fahn-chee; elephant)
- ✓ **dedo** (deh-doo; finger)

If it comes at the end of a word, though, *e* usually has an *ee* sound.

- ✓ **dificuldade** (jee-fee-kool-dah-jee; difficulty)
- ✓ **boate** (boh-ah-chee; nightclub)

If the *e* has a hat on it (*ê*), don't worry. It has the same *eh* sound as normal.

- ✓ **três** (tdehz; three)

The letter *I*

The *i* has an *ee* sound, pretty much without exception.

- ✓ **inglês** (eeng-gleh; English)
- ✓ **livro** (leev-doh; book)

The letters *O* and *Ô*

The *o* by itself has an easy-to-make *oh* sound.

✓ **ontem** (*ohn-tang*; yesterday)

✓ **onda** (*ohn-dah*; wave)

At the end of a word, though, it usually sounds like *ooh*.

✓ **tudo** (*too-doo*; everything/all)

✓ **Gramado** (*gdah-mah-doo*; a city in Rio Grande do Sul, famous for its film festival)

The *o* also comes with a hat on it (*ô*). Don't fear the weirdness — it takes an *oh* sound, like normal.

✓ **ônibus** (*oh-nee-boos*; bus)

The letter *U*

The *u* has an *ooh* sound.

✓ **urso** (*ooh-soo*; bear)

✓ **útil** (*ooh-chee-ooh*; useful)

✓ **ou** (*oh*; or)

Chapter 2

Grammar on a Diet: Just the Basics

In This Chapter

- ▶ Forming simple sentences
 - ▶ Understanding regular and irregular verb conjugations
 - ▶ Making connections
 - ▶ Cluing in on contractions
 - ▶ Indirect objects: When something happens to you and me
 - ▶ Stating possessives
-

Ick. Grammar. Remember that word from high school? The way grammar is usually taught, you feel like you're doing math problems, not exploring fun cultural stuff. Well, in this chapter, I don't talk about grammar as a set of rules to memorize. Think of this as grammar made fun.

Constructing Simple Sentences

A simple sentence construction (in French or in English) consists of a noun, an adjective, a verb, and, possibly, an adverb.

Nouns

As in English, nouns are one of the main parts of Portuguese speech — the most important pieces of the puzzle. They're used to name people, places, and things, like **casa** (*kah-zah*; house), **amigo** (*ah-mee-goo*; friend), **Maria** (*mah-dee-ah*; the name of a woman), **caneta** (*kah-neh-tah*; pen), and **Brasil** (*bdah-zee-ooh*; Brazil).

Portuguese nouns come in two types: masculine and feminine. Masculine nouns usually end in *-o*, and feminine nouns usually end in *-a*.

Adjectives

Keeping the gender of the thing you're talking about in mind is important because every time you describe the noun with an adjective — like **bonita** (*boo-nee-tah*; pretty), **simpático** (*seem-pah-chee-koo*; nice), or **grande** (*gdahn-jee*; big) — you change the end of the adjective to match the gender of the noun. Like nouns, masculine adjectives normally end in *-o*, and feminine adjectives end in *-a*.



In Portuguese, the adjective normally comes *after* the noun.

Here's how the nouns and adjectives get paired off:

- ✓ **homem lindo** (*oh-mang leen-doo*; good-looking/handsome man)
- ✓ **mulher linda** (*mool-yeh leen-dah*; good-looking/beautiful woman)
- ✓ **quarto limpo** (*kwah-too leem-poo*; clean room)
- ✓ **casa suja** (*kah-zah soo-zhah*; dirty house)
- ✓ **comida gostosa** (*koh-mee-dah goh-stoh-zah*; delicious food)

Some adjectives are neutral and stay the same for both masculine and feminine nouns. These adjectives often end in *-e* rather than *-o* or *-a*. Adjectives in this

group include **inteligente** (een-teh-lee-zhang-chee; intelligent) and **grande** (gdahn-jee; big).

Notice how the word **inteligente** stays the same, whether the noun is male or female:

- ✓ **Ela é muito inteligente.** (eh-lah eh moh-ee-toh een-teh-lee-zhang-chee; She is very intelligent.)
- ✓ **Ele é muito inteligente.** (eh-lee eh moh-ee-toh een-teh-lee-zhang-chee; He is very intelligent.)

If the noun is plural, just add an *s* to the end of the adjective: **cachorros pequenos** (kah-shoh-hooz peh-keh-nooz; small dogs).

Articles

Just as with Portuguese nouns and adjectives, the gender game is also at play when it comes to articles — words like *the*, *a*, *an*, and *some*.

Now's the time to *ooh* and *ah* over grammar — **o** (ooh) means “the” for masculine nouns, and **a** (ah) means “the” for feminine nouns:

- ✓ **o homem lindo** (ooh oh-mang leen-doo; the handsome man)
- ✓ **a mulher linda** (ah mool-yeh leen-dah; the beautiful woman)
- ✓ **o quarto limpo** (ooh kwah-too leem-poo; the clean room)
- ✓ **a casa suja** (ah kah-zah soo-zhah; the dirty house)

If a noun is plural, use **os** (ooz) if the noun's masculine and **as** (ahz) if it's feminine:

- ✓ **os barcos grandes** (ooz bah-kooz gdahn-jeez; the big boats)
- ✓ **as flores amarelas** (ahz floh-deez ah-mah-deh-lahz; the yellow flowers)

Brazilians use the word *the* in front of nouns much more often than people do in English. When you'd say, "Books are fun," they'd say **Os livros são divertidos** (oohz leev-dooz sah-ooh jee-veh-chee-dooz; *Literally*: The books are fun). "Brazil is big" would be **O Brasil é grande** (ooh bdah-zee-ooh eh gdahn-jee; *Literally*: The Brazil is big).

To say "a," as in "a hat" or "a table," say **um** (oong) for masculine nouns and **uma** (ooh-mah) for feminine nouns:

- ✓ **um banheiro** (oong bahn-yay-doh; a bathroom)
- ✓ **uma pessoa** (ooh-mah peh-soh-ah; a person)
- ✓ **um livro** (oong leev-doh; a book)
- ✓ **uma mesa** (ooh-mah meh-zah; a table)

To say "some," use **uns** (oonz) if the noun is masculine or **umas** (ooh-mahz) if it's feminine:

- ✓ **uns sapatos** (oonz sah-pah-too; some shoes)
- ✓ **umas garotas** (ooh-mahz gah-doh-tahz; some girls)
- ✓ **umas praias** (ooh-mahz pdah-ee-ahz; some beaches)



When you make the plural of a word ending in *-m*, such as **um**, the *m* always changes to an *n*: **Um homem** (oong oh-mang; a man) becomes **uns homens** (oonz oh-mangz; the men).

Pronouns

You use pronouns to refer to people when you don't say their names. Here's the way Brazilians do it:

- ✓ **eu** (eh-ooh; I)
- ✓ **você** (voh-seh; you)
- ✓ **ele** (eh-lee; he/him)
- ✓ **ela** (eh-lah; she/her)

- ✓ **nós** (nohz; we/us)
- ✓ **eles** (eh-leez; they/them — all males or males and females)
- ✓ **elas** (eh-lahz; they/them — all females)



Brazilians don't have an equivalent of the English word *it*. Because "things" are either masculine or feminine in Portuguese, Brazilians refer to the thing or things as **ele/ela/eles/elas** when the thing isn't named.



If you're talking to a person who's a lot older than you (especially the elderly) or to an important person like a boss or a politician, instead of using **você**, use **o senhor** (ooh seen-yoh; *Literally*: the gentleman) or **a senhora** (ah seen-yoh-dah; *Literally*: the lady) to show respect.

Verbs

To really make a sentence come alive, you need verbs. Along with nouns, verbs make up the main parts of a sentence. Verbs can link a describing word to what it describes. The most basic linking-verb words in Portuguese are **é** (eh; is) and **são** (sah-ooh; are). The following sentences simply use nouns, verbs, and adjectives in the same order you'd use them in English:

- ✓ **A casa é bonita.** (ah kah-zah eh boo-nee-tah; The house is pretty.)
- ✓ **O amigo é simpático.** (ooh ah-mee-goo eh seem-pah-chee-koo; The friend is nice.)
- ✓ **As rosas são vermelhas.** (ahz hoh-zahz sah-ooh veh-mel-yahz; The roses are red.)

Of course, all you need to create a sentence is a noun followed by a verb. When the person, place, or thing is doing something, a verb signals the action. Action verbs include **estuda** (eh-stoo-dah; studies), **vai** (vah-ee; goes), and **canta** (kahn-tah; sings). Here are some complete sentences:

- ✓ **Os amigos falam.** (oohz ah-mee-gooz fah-lah-ooh; The friends talk.)
- ✓ **O gato dorme.** (ooh gah-too doh-mee; The cat sleeps.)
- ✓ **A mãe cozinha.** (ah mah-ee koh-zing-yah; The mom cooks.)

When you want to ask a question, you don't have to change the order of the words. Just say the same thing, but raise the pitch of your voice at the end of the sentence. Use the voice you use to ask questions in English; it's that easy.

- ✓ **A casa é bonita?** (ah kah-zah eh boo-nee-tah; Is the house pretty?)
- ✓ **As rosas são vermelhas?** (ahz hoh-zahz sah-oooh veh-mel-yahz; Are the roses red?)

The verb can change a bit depending on who's doing the action. The next section tells you how to know which verb form to use.

The Simple Tenses: Present, Past, and Future

Tense simply means "time." So if you want to express an action or a state of being taking place in the present, you use the present tense. If it hasn't happened yet, you use the future tense. And if it took place in the past, you use the past tense.

For each tense, you have to conjugate the verb. *Conjugation* is basically a matter of matching a verb to a subject. Portuguese verbs come in three varieties: those that end in -ar, -er, and -ir. The -ar ending is your best friend; with a few exceptions, -ar verbs tend to be conjugated the same way, all the time. The -ir and -er verbs can be a little trickier. There are

general rules for their conjugation, but not all verbs ending in *-ir* or *-er* follow the rules.

To conjugate a verb, you snip off the ending (*-ar*, *-er*, *-ir*) and add a new one, depending on who's doing the action. The following sections explain which endings to use.



In this book, I separate **você** (you) and **ele/ela** (him/her) into different lines even though they use the same conjugation. I also don't show in the conjugation charts the formal version of *you*: **o senhor/a senhora** (ooh seen-yoh/ah seen-yoh-dah). This form of address uses the same conjugation as **você** and **ele/ela**. So whenever you want to say *you* — whether you're being formal or not — you can always use the same form of the verb.



If the noun is not a person but rather a thing or place, first check out whether it's singular or plural. If it's singular, use the **ele/ela** conjugation; if it's plural, use the **eles/elas** conjugation.

Sometimes, you don't have to conjugate the verb at all. This often happens when you'd use an *-ing* ending in English: **Dançar é divertido** (dahn-sah eh jee-veh-chee-doo; Dancing is fun). **Falar português não é difícil** (fah-lah poh-too-gez nah-ooh eh jee-fee-see-ooh; Speaking Portuguese is not hard).

Present tense

To use a verb that ends in *-ar*, replace the *-ar* with one of the new verb endings: *-o*, *-a*, *-amos*, and *-am*; which ending you choose depends on the subject of the sentence. Table 2-1 shows you how the endings match up with the pronouns.

Table 2-1 Verb Endings to Use with –ar Verbs

<i>Portuguese Pronoun</i>	<i>Verb Ending</i>
eu	–o
você	–a
ele/ela	–a
nós	–amos
eles/elas	–am

Conjugating regular –er and –ir verbs isn’t difficult. For most –er and –ir verbs, just replace the –er or –ir with –o, –e, –e, –emos/–imos, or –em. Table 2-2 shows you which endings to use.

Table 2-2 Verb Endings to Use with Regular –er and –ir Verbs

<i>Portuguese Pronoun</i>	<i>Verb Ending</i>
eu	–o
você	–e
ele/ela	–e
nós	–emos (for –er verbs), –imos (for –ir verbs)
eles/elas	–em

Many –er and –ir verbs have special endings. With verbs that end in –zer, for example, like **fazer** (fah-zeh; to do) and **trazer** (tdah-zeh; to bring), you remove –zer to get the stem; the verbs then take the following endings: –ço, –z, –z, –zemos, and –zem. The last two

endings are similar to the –er verb endings (for *we* and *they*), but the first few endings (for *I* and *you/he/she*) are indeed bizarre. Here are some examples, using the *I* and *you* forms:

- ✓ **Eu faço muitas coisas.** (*eh-oooh fah-soo moh-ee-tahz koy-zahz*; I do many things.)
- ✓ **Você traz um presente.** (*voh-seh tdah-eez oong pdeh-zang-chee*; You bring a present.)

Past tense

Not everything happens in the **aqui** (*ah-kee*; here) and **agora** (*ah-goh-dah*; now). To say stuff that happened in the **passado** (*pah-sah-doh*; past), you need to change the verb conjugation.

For –ar verbs, the past-tense conjugations go like this. Take off the –ar from the verb, and add on the endings shown in Table 2-3.

Table 2-3 **Verb Endings to Use with Regular –ar Verbs**

<i>Subject Pronoun</i>	<i>Past-Tense Verb Ending</i>
eu	–ei
você	–ou
ele/ela	–ou
nós	–amos (same as in present tense)
eles/elas	–aram

For –er and –ir verbs, the past tense conjugations go like what you see in Table 2-4.

Table 2-4	Verb Endings to Use with Regular –er and –ir Verbs
<i>Subject Pronoun</i>	<i>Past-Tense Verb Ending</i>
eu	–i
você	–eu
ele/ela	–eu
nós	–emos (for –er verbs), –imos (for –ir verbs) [same as in present tense]
eles/elas	–eram (for –er verbs), –iram (for –ir verbs)

Future tense

To talk about events in the future, all you have to do is conjugate **ir** (eeh; to go/to be going), add another verb, and voilà: *You're going to. . . , He's going to. . . , We're going to. . .* For example, **Nós vamos dançar** (nohz vah-mohz dahn-sah) means “We’re going to dance.”

First take a look at the present tense (the here and now) conjugations for **ir**:

<i>Conjugation</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
eu vou	eh-ooh voh
você vai	voh-seh vah-ee
ele/ela vai	eh-lee/eh-lah vah-ee
nós vamos	nohz vah-mohz
eles/elas vão	eh-leez/eh-lahz vah-ooh

Try the magic first with the verb **viajar** (vee-ah-zhah; to travel/to take a trip):

Conjugation

eu vou viajar

você vai viajar

ele/ela vai viajar

nós vamos viajar

eles/elas vão viajar

Pronunciation*eh-oooh voh vee-ah-zhah**voh-seh vah-ee vee-ah-zhah**eh-lee/eh-lah vah-ee vee-ah-zhah**nohz vah-mohz vee-ah-zhah**eh-leez/eh-lahz vah-oooh vee-ah-zhah*

Brazilians like to say *who's* going to do something except when they're talking about **nós** (nohz; we) and **eu** (eh-oooh; I). They often leave out the **nós** or the **eu** and just start the sentence with the verb, **vamos** or **vou**.

Conjugating the tenses

Tables 2-5 through 2-11 show you how to conjugate all three tenses of several common verbs.



All regular verbs conjugate the same way, so you can flip back to this section when you want to know how to conjugate a new regular verb.

Table 2-5 Regular –ar Verb Morar (To Live)

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
eu (I)	moro	morei	vou morar
você (you)	mora	morou	vai morar
ele/ela (he/she)	mora	morou	vai morar
nós (we)	moramos	moramos	vamos morar
eles/elas (they)	moram	moraram	vão morar

Table 2-6 Regular –er Verb Comer (To Eat)			
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
eu (I)	como	comi	vou comer
você (you)	come	comeu	vai comer
ele/ela (he/she)	come	comeu	vai comer
nós (we)	comemos	comemos	vamos comer
eles/elas (they)	comem	comeram	vão comer

Table 2-7 Regular –ir Verb Abrir (To Open)			
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
eu (I)	abro	abri	vou abrir
você (you)	abre	abriu	vai abrir
ele/ela (he/she)	abre	abriu	vai abrir
nós (we)	abrimos	abrimos	vamos abrir
eles/elas (they)	abrem	abriram	vão abrir

Table 2-8 Irregular Estar (To Be Temporarily)			
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
eu	estou	estive	vou estar
você	está	estive	vai estar
ele/ela	está	estive	vai estar
nós	estamos	estivemos	vamos estar
eles/elas	estão	estiveram	vão estar

Table 2-9 Irregular Verb Ir (To Go)

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
eu	vou	fui	vou ir
você	vai	foi	vai ir
ele/ela	vai	foi	vai ir
nós	vamos	fomos	vamos ir
eles/elas	vão	foram	vão ir

Table 2-10 Irregular Verb Ser (To Be Permanently)

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
eu	sou	fui	vou ser
você	é	foi	vai ser
ele/ela	é	foi	vai ser
nós	somos	fomos	vamos ser
eles/elas	são	foram	vão ser

Table 2-11 Irregular Verb Ter (To Have)

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
eu	tenho	tive	vou ter
você	tem	teve	vai ter
ele/ela	tem	teve	vai ter
nós	temos	tivemos	vamos ter
eles/elas	têm	tiveram	vão ter

Connecting It All Together

The little connector words in Table 2-12 make the rest of the sentence fit together and help you sound like a native.

Table 2-12 Connector Words: Conjunctions and Prepositions

<i>Term</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
e	ee	and
além de	ah-lang jee	in addition to
mas	mah-eez	but
para	pah-dah	to/in order to
se	see	if
mesmo se	mehz-moh see	even if
embora	ehm-boh-dah	although
que	kee	that
só que	soh kee	except that
desde	dehz-jee	since
porque	poh-keh	because
até	ah-teh	until
com	koh-oong	with
por	poh	through/by
de	jee	of
sobre	soh-bdee	about/on top of

Here are a few examples of connectors in sentences:

- ✓ **Romeu e Julieta** (hoh-meh-oooh ee zhoo-lee-eh-tah; Romeo and Juliet)
- ✓ **café com leite** (kah-feh koh-oong lay-chee; coffee with milk)
- ✓ **desde a primeira vez que eu te vi** (dehz-jee ah pdee-may-dah vehz kee eh-oooh chee vee; ever since I first saw you)
- ✓ **é para você** (eh pah-dah voh-seh; it's for you)

Making Contractions: It's a Cinch!

When you make contractions in English — in words like *can't* and *don't* — you use an apostrophe to show that a letter is missing. Brazilians likewise combine words so they're shorter or easier to pronounce, but Portuguese doesn't use apostrophes.

Take a look at what happens in Portuguese when you combine **em** and **o**. **Em** (ang) means “in/on,” and **o** (oh) means “the.” But **em o** (in the) doesn't exist in Portuguese, because Brazilians use the contraction **no** (noo):

- ✓ **no banheiro** (noo bahn-yay-doh; in the bathroom)
- ✓ **no quarto** (noo kwah-too; in the room)
- ✓ **no teto** (noo teh-too; on the roof)

The previous examples are for singular, masculine nouns. Take a look at what happens with feminine and plural nouns. Instead of **no**, you now have **na** (feminine and singular), **nos** (masculine and plural), and **nas** (feminine and plural):

- ✓ **na mesa** (nah meh-zah; on the table)
- ✓ **na cozinha** (nah koh-zing-yah; in the kitchen)
- ✓ **na rua** (nah hoo-ah; on the street)

- ✓ **nos livros** (nooz *leev*-dooz; in books)
- ✓ **nas praias** (nahz *pdah*-ee-ahz; on beaches)

Contractions with **o** also happen with **de** (deh; of) and **por** (poh; through/on/around). For example, when you want to say “of the,” you combine **de** and **o** to form **do/da/dos/das**. To say “through/on/around the,” use **pelo/pela/pelos/pelas**. (If you’re confused about which form to use, just remember that *o* goes with masculine nouns, *a* goes with feminine, and *s* makes words plural.)

Here are some examples:

- ✓ **do computador** (doo kom-*poo*-tah-doh; of the computer)
- ✓ **das professoras** (dahz pdoh-feh-soh-dahz; of the teachers)
- ✓ **pelo telefone** (peh-loo teh-leh-foh-nee; on the phone)
- ✓ **pelas ruas** (peh-lahz hooh-ahz; through the streets)
- ✓ **dos pais** (dooz pah-eez; of the parents)

To Me, to You: Indirect Objects

One of my favorite aspects of Portuguese grammar is the way they talk about *me* and *you* being on the receiving end. In grammar books, these words are called *indirect objects*; the words *me* and *you* are in the sentence, but they’re not the ones doing the action.

Te (teh) means “you,” and **me** (meh) means “me” (that one’s easy to remember). Put these indirect objects right before the verb. Take a look at some examples:

- ✓ **Eu te dou dinheiro.** (eh-oooh chee *doh* jing-yay-doh; I give you money.)
- ✓ **Me diga o seu nome.** (mee jee-gah ooh seh-oooh noh-mee; Tell me your name.)

In the first sentence, **eu** is the subject. In the second sentence, the subject isn't even stated. You can tell that the verb **diga** is in the **você/ele/ela** form.

Commanding an Audience

Just as in English, you can drop the *you* at the beginning of a sentence when you're telling someone to do something. Brazilians love to use the formula **Me** plus a verb:

- ✓ **Me faz um recibo, por favor?** (mee *fah-eez* oong heh-see-boo poh fah-*voh*; Can you write a receipt for me, please?)
- ✓ **Me traz uma água, por favor.** (mee *tdah-eez* ooh-mah *ah-gwah*, poh fah-*voh*; Bring me a water, please.)
- ✓ **Me explica o que aconteceu.** (mee eh-*splee-kah* ooh *kee* ah-kohn-teh-seh-ooh; Explain to me what happened.)
- ✓ **Me leva até a rodoviária?** (mee *leh-vah* ah-teh ah hoh-doh-vee-*ah-dee-ah*; Can you take me to the bus station?)
- ✓ **Me dá o seu passaporte, por favor.** (mee *dah* ooh seh-ooh pah-sah-*poh-chee* poh fah-*voh*; Give me your passport, please.)

Getting Possessive

If you want to express “It’s mine,” say **É meu** (eh *meh-ooh*) while you’re pointing to something. To say “It’s yours,” use the phrase **É seu** (eh *seh-ooh*). To say “It’s ours,” use the phrase **É nosso** (eh *noh-soo*). If you want to specify what exactly is yours, change the **meu**, **seu**, or **nosso** to match the thing that you’re talking about. Just ask yourself: Is the name of that thing a masculine or feminine word? Is it singular or plural? Check out Table 2-13 for the possibilities of combinations for talking about “my” things, “your” things, and “our” things.

Table 2-13 Possessive Words — My, Your, and Our

<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Singular Masculine</i>	<i>Singular Feminine</i>	<i>Plural Masculine</i>	<i>Plural Feminine</i>
my	o meu (ooh meh- ooh)	a minha (ah ming- yah)	os meus (ooz meh- ooz)	as minhas (ahz ming- yahz)
your	o seu (ooh seh- ooh)	a sua (ah soo-ah)	os seus (ooz seh- ooz)	as suas (ahz soo- ahz)
our	o nosso (ooh noh- soo)	a nossa (ah noh- sah)	os nossos (ooz noh- sooz)	as nossas (ahz noh- sahz)

Take a look at some examples that may come up in a **hotel** (oh-tay-oo; hotel) or **pousada** (poh-zah-dah; guesthouse):

- ✓ **o meu passaporte** (ooh meh-oo pah-sah-poh-chee; my passport)
- ✓ **o seu cartão de crédito** (ooh seh-oo kah-tah-oo jee kkeh-jee-toh; your credit card)
- ✓ **as nossas bagagens** (ahz noh-sahz bah-gah-zhangz; our baggage)
- ✓ **os nossos planos** (ooz noh-sooz plah-nohz; our plans)

When you want to talk about “his,” “her,” or “their” things, you have to switch the word order. Instead of putting the possessive word in *front* of the thing (**o meu quarto** [ooh meh-oo kwah-too; my room]), first say what the thing is, and then say **de** (deh; of) plus the owner. The **de** gets attached to the **ele**, **ela**, or **eles/elas** (the “him,” “her,” or “them”), and the **e** between the words is dropped.

- ✓ **dele** (*deh-lee*; his. *Literally*: of him)
- ✓ **dela** (*deh-lah*; her. *Literally*: of her)
- ✓ **deles** (*deh-leez*; their — for all males or males and females. *Literally*: of them)
- ✓ **delas** (*deh-lahz*; their — for all females. *Literally*: of them)

Technically, when you say **o quarto dele** (ooh *kwah-toh deh-lee*; his room), you're saying "the room of him."



Name the thing first, and then say whose it is.

- ✓ **o dinheiro dela** (ooh jing-yay-doh *deh-lah*; her money)
- ✓ **a comida deles** (ah koh-mee-dah *deh-leez*; their food — for all males or males and females)
- ✓ **as roupas delas** (ahz hoh-pahz *deh-lahz*; their clothes — for all females)

Using a specific name is the easiest situation. Just say the name of the thing plus **de** and the specific name. Also note that people's names always take an *o* or an *a* before them (depending on whether the person is male or female); when combined with **de**, these words become **do** or **da**. When you want to say "Lucia's house," you can say **a casa da Lucia** (ah *kah-zah dah loo-see-ah*), which literally means "the house of Lucia." Check out some other examples:

- ✓ **o carro do Mario** (ooh *kah-hoh doo mah-dee-oh*; Mario's car)
- ✓ **o cabelo da Ana Cristina** (ooh *kah-beh-loh dah ah-nah kdee-schee-nah*; Ana Cristina's hair)
- ✓ **as empresas da Petrobrás** (ahz ehm-pdeh-zahz dah peh-tdoh-bdah-eez; Petrobras's companies — Petrobrás is Brazil's largest oil company)
- ✓ **as praias do Pará** (ahz pdah-ee-ahz doo pah-dah; Para state's beaches)

Chapter 3

Numerical Gumbo: Counting of All Kinds

In This Chapter

- ▶ Counting to ten
 - ▶ Telling time
 - ▶ Ticking off the calendar
 - ▶ Spending money
-

Good news! Numerals are the same in Portuguese as in English, so inside a Brazilian store, you can understand the price of something — even if you don't remember a word of Portuguese. This may sound obvious, but the point is that a little familiarity in new surroundings can give you the reassurance and courage to have a little chat with the store clerk. This chapter also shows you how to tell time and navigate the calendar.

Numbers to Know: When Everything Counts

Whether you're telling the time, asking about street numbers, or discussing prices, you need to know how to say numbers. Here are numbers one through ten:

- ✓ **um** (oong; one)
- ✓ **dois** (doh-eez; two)

- ✓ **três** (tdehz; three)
- ✓ **quatro** (kwah-tdoo; four)
- ✓ **cinco** (sing-koo; five)
- ✓ **seis** (say-eez; six)
- ✓ **sete** (seh-chee; seven)
- ✓ **oito** (oh-ee-toh; eight)
- ✓ **nove** (noh-vee; nine)
- ✓ **dez** (dez; ten)

Now check out how to say 11 through 19:

- ✓ **onze** (ohn-zee; 11)
- ✓ **doze** (doh-zee; 12)
- ✓ **treze** (tdeh-zee; 13)
- ✓ **quatorze** (kah-toh-zee; 14)
- ✓ **quinze** (keen-zee; 15)
- ✓ **dezeseis** (dez-eh-say-eez; 16)
- ✓ **dezesete** (dez-eh-seh-chee; 17)
- ✓ **dezoito** (dez-oh-ee-toh; 18)
- ✓ **dezenove** (dez-eh-noh-vee; 19)

And these are numbers 20 to 100, counting by tens:

- ✓ **vinte** (ving-chee; 20)
- ✓ **trinta** (tdeen-tah; 30)
- ✓ **quarenta** (kwah-dang-tah; 40)
- ✓ **cinquenta** (sing-kwen-tah; 50)
- ✓ **sessenta** (seh-sen-tah; 60)
- ✓ **setenta** (seh-ten-tah; 70)
- ✓ **oitenta** (oh-ee-ten-tah; 80)
- ✓ **noventa** (noh-ven-tah; 90)
- ✓ **cem** (sang; 100)

To say a double-digit number that doesn't end in zero, you just put the word **e** (ee; and) in between your tens and ones digits. If you want to say 34, for example, say **trinta e quatro** (*tdeen-tah ee kwah-tdoh*; *Literally: 30 and 4*).

To say 101 through 199, use **cento e** (*sehn-too ee*) plus the rest of number: **Cento e trinta e quatro** (*sehn-too ee tdeen-tah ee kwah-tdoh*) is 134, and **cento e oitenta e sete** (*sehn-too ee oh-ee-ten-tah ee seh-chee*) is 187.

For 201 through 999, replace the **cento** with the following hundreds terms:

- ✓ **duzentos** (*doo-zen-tooz*; 200)
- ✓ **trezentos** (*tdeh-zen-tooz*; 300)
- ✓ **quatrocentos** (*kwah-tdoo-sen-tooz*; 400)
- ✓ **quinhentos** (*keen-yen-tooz*; 500)
- ✓ **seiscentos** (*say-sen-tooz*; 600)
- ✓ **setecentos** (*seh-chee-sen-tooz*; 700)
- ✓ **oitocentos** (*oh-ee-too-sen-tooz*; 800)
- ✓ **novecentos** (*noh-vee-sen-tooz*; 900)

One thousand is **mil** (*mee-oooh*), and one million is **um milhão** (*oong meel-yah-oooh*). For numbers in those ranges, just add an **e** and then the rest of the number.

The Big Countdown: Ordinal Numbers

When people give directions, they often use ordinal numbers. Someone may tell you to take the **primeira** (*pdee-may-dah*; first) left and then the **terceira** (*teh-say-dah*; third) right. Or someone may say to take the elevator to the **sétimo** (*seh-chee-moh*; seventh) floor. Here's a handy list for all that:

- ✓ **primeiro** (*pdee-may-doh*; first)
- ✓ **segundo** (*seh-goan-doh*; second)

- ✓ **terceiro** (teh-say-doh; third)
- ✓ **quarto** (kwah-toh; fourth)
- ✓ **quinto** (keen-toh; fifth)
- ✓ **sexto** (sehs-toh; sixth)
- ✓ **sétimo** (seh-chee-moh; seventh)
- ✓ **oitavo** (oh-ee-tah-voh; eighth)
- ✓ **nono** (noh-noh; ninth)

Try to remember to change the ending to **-a** instead of **-o** if the following word is feminine.

Here are some example sentences using the ordinal numbers:

- ✓ **Pega a primeira direita.** (peh-gah ah pdee-may-dah jee-day-tah; Take the first right.)
- ✓ **Moro no quarto andar.** (moh-doo noh kwah-toh ahn-dah; I live on the fourth floor.)
- ✓ **É a segunda porta.** (eh ah seh-goon-dah poh-tah; It's the second door.)

Telling Time

Saying the time of **dia** (jee-ah; day) is easy in Portuguese. With a little practice, you can have it memorized in no time. Just say **São . . .** (the number of hours) **e . . .** (the number of minutes) **horas: São cinco e quinze** (sah-ooh sing-koh ee keen-zee; It's 5:15).

Most of the time, people don't even say the word **horas**. Using the word **horas** is similar to saying *o'clock*, which is optional: **São sete** (sah-ooh ahz seh-chee; It's seven) and **São sete horas** (sah-ooh ahz seh-chee oh-dahz; It's seven o'clock) both mean the same thing. If it's half past the hour, say **e meia** (ee may-ah; and a half). Here are some examples:

- ✓ **São duas horas.** (*sah-oooh doo-ahz oh-dahz*; It's two o'clock.)
- ✓ **São duas e meia.** (*sah-oooh doo-ahz ee may-ah*; It's 2:30.)
- ✓ **São quinze para as três.** (*sah-oooh keen-zee pah-dah ahz tdehz*; It's 15 to 3:00 [2:45].)
- ✓ **São onze e quinze.** (*sah-oooh ohn-zee ee keen-zee*; It's 11:15.)
- ✓ **São oito e dez.** (*sah-oooh oh-ee-toh ee dez*; It's 8:10.)



In English, people sometimes give the time as “quarter after” or “five till” a certain hour. Brazilians sometimes use similar phrases and constructions. For times 15 minutes after the hour, you have the option of saying **e quinze** (*ee keen-zee*; and 15) or **e um quarto** (*ee oong kwah-too*; and a quarter) when you give the minutes. For times ending in 45, you can say either **quinze para** (*keen-zee pah-dah*; 15 to) before you give the hour or **e quarenta e cinco** (*ee kwah-den-tah ee sing-koh*; and 45) after you give the hour.

Midnight is **meia-noite** (*may-ah noh-ee-chee*), and *noon* is **meio-dia** (*may-oh jee-ah*; midday). In these cases — and when you say “it’s one o’clock” — use **É** instead of **São**, because the number one and the words *midnight* and *noon* are singular:

- ✓ **É meia-noite.** (*eh may-ah noh-ee-chee*; It’s midnight.)
- ✓ **É meio-dia.** (*eh may-oh jee-ah*; It’s noon.)
- ✓ **É uma.** (*eh ooh-mah*; It’s one.)
- ✓ **É uma e vinte.** (*eh ooh-mah ee veen-chee*; It’s 1:20.)



Brazilians often use military time, especially in formal situations, like checking transportation schedules.

Here are some other words and phrases that indicate time:

- ✓ **hoje à noite** (*oh-zhee ah noh-ee-chee*; tonight)
- ✓ **noite** (*noh-ee-chee*; night)
- ✓ **cedo** (*seh-doo*; early)
- ✓ **tarde** (*tah-jee*; late)

If you're meeting up with someone, you may want to ask **A que horas?** (*ah kee oh-dahz*; At what time?) you'll be meeting. If you're responding to the question, you can leave out the **são** and just give the time: **Às nove e meia** (*noh-vee ee may-ah*; at 9:30).

When you've got talking about time down, here are some helpful phrases about timeliness;

- ✓ **O ônibus está atrasado?** (*eh-stah ah-tdah-zah-doo ooh oh-nee-boos*; Is the bus late?)
- ✓ **É sempre melhor chegar cedo.** (*eh sem-pdee mel-yoh sheh-gah seh-doo*; It's always better to arrive early.)
- ✓ **Acha que vamos poder chegar a tempo?** (*ah-shah kee vah-mooz poh-deh sheh-gah ah tem-poh*; Do you think we'll be able to arrive on time?)
- ✓ **O metrô de São Paulo é muito pontual.** (*ooh meh-tdoh jee sah-oooh pah-oooh-loh eh moh-ee-toh pon-too-ah-oooh*; The São Paulo subway system is very punctual.)
- ✓ **O atraso vai ser de uma hora.** (*ooh ah-tdah-zoo vah-ee seh jee ooh-mah oh-dah*; The delay will be an hour.)
- ✓ **Quase não chegamos a tempo.** (*kwah-zee nah-oooh sheh-gah-mohz ah tem-poh*; We almost didn't arrive in time.)

Monday, Tuesday: Weekdays

Dias da semana (*jee-ahz dah seh-mah-nah*; days of the week) in Portuguese seem bizarre at first.

According to legend, the Portuguese were obsessed with **feiras** (*fay-dahz*; outdoor food markets), and they sold different goods on each day of the **semana**. **Feiras** were so important to the Portuguese that they talked about the weekdays in reference to which **feira** was happening that day. Here are the days of the week:

- ✓ **domingo** (*doh-ming-goo*; Sunday)
- ✓ **segunda-feira** (*seh-goona-dah-fay-dah*; Monday)
- ✓ **terça-feira** (*teh-sah-fay-dah*; Tuesday)
- ✓ **quarta-feira** (*kwah-tah-fay-dah*; Wednesday)
- ✓ **quinta-feira** (*keen-tah-fay-dah*; Thursday)
- ✓ **sexta-feira** (*seh-stah-fay-dah*; Friday)
- ✓ **sábado** (*sah-bah-doh*; Saturday)

Brazilians also sometimes refer to the weekdays by their name without the word **feira**. **Segunda** is technically **segunda-feira** (*Literally*: second market — Monday is the second day of the week and a *market* or business day). But people often just say **segunda** or **quarta** or **sexta** — instead of **segunda-feira**, **quarta-feira**, and **sexta-feira**.

To say *on* a certain day of week, like *on Sunday*, say **no** (*noh*) or **na** (*nah*) before the day of the week — **no** if the day is a masculine word, **na** if it's feminine:

- ✓ **no domingo** (*noh doh-meeng-goh*; on Sunday)
- ✓ **na segunda** (*nah seh-goona-dah*; on Monday)
- ✓ **na terça** (*nah teh-sah*; on Tuesday)
- ✓ **na quarta** (*nah kwah-tah*; on Wednesday)
- ✓ **na quinta** (*nah keen-tah*; on Thursday)
- ✓ **na sexta** (*nah seh-stah*; on Friday)
- ✓ **no sábado** (*noh sah-bah-doh*; on Saturday)

Here are some examples:

- ✓ **Tem um show na quarta.** (*tang oong shoh nah kwah-tah*; There's a show on Wednesday.)

- ✓ **Na segunda, eu preciso trabalhar.** (nah seh-gooh-dah eh-oooh pdeh-see-zoo tdah-bal-yah; On Monday, I need to work.)
- ✓ **Vamos sair na sexta?** (vah-mooz sah-eeh nah seh-stah; Should we go out on Friday?)

The following phrases are related to days:

- ✓ **hoje** (oh-zhee; today)
- ✓ **amanhã** (ah-mahn-yah; tomorrow)
- ✓ **na semana que vem** (nah seh-mah-nah kee vang; next week)
- ✓ **no fim de semana** (noh feeng jee seh-mah-nah; on the weekend)
- ✓ **no mês que vem** (noh mehz kee vang; next month)

Tracking the Calendar: Months and Dates

Whether you're planning dinner next week or a big appointment for work, you need to know how to talk your way around a calendar.

Naming the months

Note that, in Portuguese, the first letter of the name of each month isn't capitalized like it is in English:

- ✓ **janeiro** (zhah-nay-doh; January)
- ✓ **fevereiro** (feh-veh-day-doh; February)
- ✓ **março** (mah-soo; March)
- ✓ **abril** (ah-bdee-oooh; April)
- ✓ **maio** (my-oh; May)
- ✓ **junho** (zhoon-yoh; June)
- ✓ **julho** (zhool-yoh; July)

- ✓ **agosto** (ah-goh-stoh; August)
- ✓ **setembro** (seh-tehm-bdoh; September)
- ✓ **outubro** (oh-too-bdoh; October)
- ✓ **novembro** (noh-vehm-bdoh; November)
- ✓ **dezembro** (deh-zem-bdoh; December)

To say *in* a certain month, use **em** (ang) plus the name of the month. Here are some example sentences:

- ✓ **Vou para o Brasil em maio.** (voh pah-dah ooh bdah-zee-ooh ang my-oh; I'm going to Brazil in May.)
- ✓ **Ela retornou do Canadá em novembro.** (eh-lah heh-toh-noh doo kah-nah-dah ang noh-vehm-bdoh; She returned from Canada in November.)

Picking a date

You may want to talk about days of the month and time of day for your odyssey.



To say *on* a certain day, use **no** (noh) plus the date. Use **no dia . . .** (date) **de . . .** (month) (noo jee-ah . . . jee . . .) to say *on such-and-such day of such-and-such month*. For example, **no dia quinze de setembro** (noo jee-ah keen-zee jee seh-tehm-bdoh) is September 15.

Check out some phrases that give you dates and times:

- ✓ **no dia três de outubro, às oito e vinte e cinco da manhã** (noo jee-ah tdehz jee oh-too-bdoh ahz oh-ee-toh ee veen-chee ee sing-koh dah mahn-yah; on October 3, at 8:25 a.m.)
- ✓ **no dia vinte e dois de agosto, às vinte horas** (noo jee-ah veen-chee ee doh-eez jee ah-goh-stoh ahz veen-chee oh-dahz; on August 22, at 8 o'clock p.m. [2000 hours])

- ✓ **no dia dezessete de dezembro, às vinte e uma horas e cinquenta minutos** (noo *jee*-ah deh-zeh-*seh*-chee jee deh-zeh-bdoh ahz *veen*-chee ee ooh-mah oh-dahz ee sing-*kwen*-tah mee-noo-tohz; on December 17, at 9:50 p.m. [2150 hours])
- ✓ **no dia quatorze de maio, às dez e quinze da manhã** (noo *jee*-ah kah-toh-zee jee *my*-oh ahz dez ee *keen*-zee dah mahn-yah; on May 14, at 10:15 a.m.)

If you're referring to something in the past or far out in the future, your date requires an **ano** (*ah*-noh; year). Most years people refer to start with either 19 or 20. If the year is in the 1900s, say **mil novecentos e . . .** (*mee*-ooh noh-*vee sehn*-tohz ee; Nineteen . . .) If the year is in the current **século** (*seh*-koo-loh; century), say **dois mil e . . .** (*doh*-eez *mee*-ooh ee; Two-thousand . . .). Here are some examples of different years:

- ✓ **mil novecentos e cinquenta e dois** (*mee*-ooh noh-*vee sehn*-tohz ee sing-*kwehn*-tah ee *doh*-eez; 1952)
- ✓ **mil novecentos e oitenta e três** (*mee*-ooh noh-*vee sehn*-tohz ee oh-ee-*tehn*-tah ee *tdeh*z; 1983)
- ✓ **mil novecentos e setenta e quatro** (*mee*-ooh noh-*vee sehn*-tohz ee seh-*tehn*-tah ee *kwah*-tdoh; 1974)
- ✓ **dois mil e um** (*doh*-eez *mee*-ooh ee oong; 2001)
- ✓ **dois mil e seis** (*doh*-eez *mee*-ooh ee say-eez; 2006)

Money, Money, Money

O dinheiro (o jing-yay-doh; money) is the universal language. Or is that **o amor** (o ah-moh; love)?

Currency and prices

The **moeda** (moh-eh-dah; currency) in Brazil is called **o real** (oh heh-ah-oooh), and the plural is **reais** (heh-eyez). The **taxa de câmbio** (tah-shah jee kahm-bee-oh; exchange rate) is about **um real** (oong heh-ah-oooh; one real) to \$0.45 (2.22 reais per US\$1), and things are generally more than **duas vezes** (doo-ahz veh-zeez; two times) **mais barato** (mah-eez bah-dah-toh; cheaper) than they are in the United States. Rejoice!



Brazilian slang for **dinheiro** is **grana** (gdah-nah). **Estou sem grana** (eh-stoh sang gdah-nah) means “I don’t have any dough” (*Literally: I’m without dough*).

Brazilian **reais** come in several bills, each with its own color and an animal found in Brazil on the back. The bills are as follows: R\$1 (green/hummingbird), R\$2 (blue/tortoise), R\$5 (purple and blue/heron), R\$10 (red/parrot), R\$20 (yellow/golden-faced lion monkey), R\$50 (brown/jaguar), and R\$100 (blue/grouper fish).

Coins come in R\$1, R\$0.50, R\$0.25, R\$0.10, R\$0.05 and R\$0.01. The **um centavo** (oong sen-tah-voh; one-cent) coin is tiny and is hardly worth anything. Stores more often than not let you get away with paying to within R\$0.05 of the price, to avoid having the one-cent pieces around. **Remember:** They’re worth $\frac{1}{100}$ of one real, or about $\frac{1}{2}$ of a U.S. penny.

To say a **preço** (pdeh-soo; the price), use the following formula: the number of **reais**, plus **e** (ee; and), plus the number of **centavos** (sehn-tah-vohz; cents):

- ✓ **R\$12,30: doze reais e trinta centavos** (doh-zee heh-eyez ee tdeen-tah sehn-tah-vohz; 12 reais and 30 cents)
- ✓ **R\$4,60: quatro reais e sessenta centavos** (kwah-tdoh heh-eyez ee seh-sehn-tah sehn-tah-vohz; 4 reais and 60 cents)
- ✓ **R\$2,85: dois reais e oitenta e cinco centavos** (doh-eez heh-eyez ee oh-ee-tehn-tah ee sing-koh sehn-tah-vohz; 2 reais and 85 cents)



Did you notice that instead of decimal points, Brazilians use commas? The decimal point is reserved in Portuguese for numbers beginning with a thousand — which looks like 1.000. So R\$2.440 would be *two thousand, four hundred and forty reais*.

Getting money from banks and ATMs

When you need to get or exchange money, the following words are very important:

- ✓ **agência de viagens** (ah-zhang-see-ah jee vee-ah-zhangz; travel agency)
- ✓ **banco** (bahn-koh; bank)
- ✓ **caixa automático** (kah-ee-shah ah-oooh-toh-mah-chee-koh; ATM)
- ✓ **cartão de banco** (kah-tah-oooh jee bahn-koh; ATM card)
- ✓ **cartão de crédito** (kah-tah-oooh jee kdech-jee-toh; credit card)
- ✓ **cartões internacionais** (kah-toh-eez een-teh-nah-see-oooh-nah-eez; international cards)
- ✓ **cheques de viagem** (sheh-keez jee vee-ah-zhang; traveler's checks)
- ✓ **taxa de câmbio** (tah-shah jee kahm-bee-oh; exchange rate)
- ✓ **retirar** (heh-chee-dah; to withdraw)
- ✓ **trocar** (tdoh-kah; to change money)

To ask where the nearest **banco** or **caixa automático** is, say:

- ✓ **Por favor, sabe onde tem um caixa automático?** (poh fah-voh, sah-bee ohn-jee tang ooohng kah-ee-shah ah-oooh-toh-mah-chee-koh; Excuse me, do you know where there's an ATM?)
- ✓ **Por favor, tem um banco perto daqui?** (poh fah-voh, tang oong bahn-koh peh-toh dah-kee; Excuse me, is there a bank near here?)

Following up by asking whether the area the bank or ATM is located is reasonably **seguro** (seh-goo-doh; safe) is a good idea. Say **O local é seguro?** (ooh loh-kah-ooh eh seh-goo-doh; Is the area safe?). If you avoid withdrawing money at night, you should be fine.

Ask these questions when you want to change money:

- ✓ **Trocam dólares por reais?** (tdoh-kah-ooh doh-lah-deez poh hay-eyez; Do you change dollars for reais?)
- ✓ **A quanto está o dólar?** (ah kwahn-toh eh-stah ooh doh-lah; What's the rate for the dollar?)
- ✓ **Cobram taxa de comissão?** (koh-bdah-ooh tah-shah jee koh-mee-sah-ooh; Do you charge a commission fee?)



Brazilian vendors always seem to be out of **trocado** (tdoh-kah-doh; change). Getting large bills changed at the **banco**, right after you get it out of the **caixa automático**, is best. Vendors often ask **Tem trocado?** (tang tdoh-kah-doh; Do you have change?) when you pay, meaning “Do you have exact change? That would help me out.”

Here's a sample conversation about changing money:

Silvio: **Por favor, trocam dólares por reais aqui?** (poh fah-voh, tdoh-kah-ooh doh-lah-deez poh heh-eyez ah-kee? Excuse me please, do you change dollars for reais here?)

Worker: **Trocamos.** (tdoh-kah-mooz; Yes, we do. [Literally: We change.])

Silvio: **Cobram taxa de comissão?** (koh-bdah-ooh tah-shah deh koh-mee-sah-ooh? Do you charge a fee?)

Worker: **Sim, é de dois por cento. Quanto quer trocar?** (sing, eh jee doh-eez poh-sehn-toh. kwahn-toh keh tdoh-kah? Yes, it's 2 percent. How much do you want to change?)

Silvio: **Cem dólares. A quanto está o dólar?**

(*sang* doh-lah-deez. ah *kwahn*-toh eh-stah ooh doh-lah? \$100. What's the rate for the dollar?)

Worker: **Está a dois reais e trinta e quatro.** (eh-stah ah doh-eez heh-eyes ee tdeen-tah ee kwah-tдох. It's at 2.34 reais.)

Silvio: **Tá bom. Me dá em notas de dez?** (tah boh-oong. mee dah ang noh-tahz jee dehzh? That's fine. Can you give it to me in bills of 10?)

Worker: **Tudo bem. Não tem problema.** (too-doh bang. nah-ooh tang pdoh-bleh-mah. Okay. No problem.)

Words to Know

Me dá ... ?

mee dah

Can you give me ... ?

notas

noh-tahz

bills

Não tem problema.

nah-ooh tang
pdoh-bleh-mah

No problem.

Measuring Distances and Other Stuff

Measuring things like volume and weight is just as universal. But if you happen to be an American, you'll find that the way Brazilians measure stuff is different: They use the metric system.

Check out Table 3-1 for the names of metric measurements and some U.S. equivalents.

Table 3-1		Brazilian Measurements		
<i>Type of Measurement</i>	<i>Term</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>U.S. Equivalent</i>
Distance	quilômetro	kee-loh-meh-tdoh	kilometer	0.62 miles
Length	centímetro	sehn-chee-meh-tdoh	centimeter	0.4 inches
Volume	litro	lee-tdoh	liter	1.06 quarts
Weight/mass	quilo	kee-loh	kilogram	2.2 pounds
Temperature	centígrados	sehn-chee-gdah-dohz	degrees Celsius	$\frac{9}{5}$ Celsius temperature + 32

Chapter 4

Making New Friends and Enjoying Small Talk

In This Chapter

- ▶ Saying hello
- ▶ Introducing yourself and friends
- ▶ Expressing who you are and how you are
- ▶ Talking about talking
- ▶ Talking in the weather
- ▶ Presenting family

Saying “hello” and “goodbye” is the nuts and bolts of any **língua** (*ling-gwah*; language). The **próximo passo** (*pdoh-see-moh pah-soh*; next step) is introducing yourself to people and introducing the people you’re with. You’ll want to tell people your **nome** (*noh-mee*; name), maybe even your **apelido** (*ah-peh-lee-doh*; nickname). Then comes the small talk about the weather, friends, work, or family.

When you’re just learning a language, talking to people — even about the most basic things — can be a little stressful. But if you think about it, the first few minutes of talking to anybody new usually involves the same old questions. This chapter covers the questions that people who speak Portuguese are most likely to ask you, as well as the questions you’ll probably want to ask them!

If you get a little lost in a conversation, these phrases will help you out:

- ✓ **Não entendi.** (*nah-ooh ehn-ten-jee*; I didn't understand.)
- ✓ **Oi?** (*oh-ee*; What did you say? [informal])
- ✓ **Poderia repetir, por favor?** (*poh-deh-dee-ah heh-peh-chee poh fah-voh*; Could you repeat that, please?)

A Few Ways to Say Hello and Goodbye

Saying “hello” is the bare necessity whether you’re at home or in Brazil. Here are the most common ways of saying “hello” in Brazil:

- ✓ **Oi.** (*oh-ee*; Hi.)
- ✓ **Olá.** (*oh-lah*; Hello.)

If you’re walking into a shop, restaurant, or hotel, it’s more common to use “Good morning” or “Good afternoon” — just like in English:

- ✓ **Bom dia.** (*boh-oong jee-ah*; Good morning.)
- ✓ **Boa tarde.** (*boh-ah tah-jee*; Good afternoon/Good evening.)
- ✓ **Boa noite.** (*boh-ah noh-ee-chee*; Good evening/Good night.)



In Brazil, **a tarde** (*ah tah-jee*; the afternoon) starts and ends a little bit later than you may be used to. The afternoon **começa** (*koh-meh-sah*; starts) around 2 p.m. and ends at about 8 p.m. Noon to 2 p.m. is **meio-dia** (*may-oh-jee-ah*; midday). But **ninguém** (*ning-gang*; no one) ever says **Bom meio-dia!** Go figure. They usually just say **Boa tarde.**

Another way of saying *hello* in Brazil is by asking directly, “How are you?” There are two ways of saying it:

- ✓ **Tudo bem?** (*too-doh bang*; How are you?
Literally: Everything well?)
- ✓ **Tudo bom?** (*too-doh boh-oong*; How are you?
Literally: Everything good?)

Here’s how you answer:

- ✓ **Tudo bem.** (*too-doh bang*; I’m good. *Literally*: Everything well.)
- ✓ **Tudo bom.** (*too-doh boh-oong*; I’m good.
Literally: Everything good.)



So what’s the difference between **Tudo bem** and **Tudo bom**, you ask? Here’s the big answer: There is none! They mean the same thing. But here’s a great trick: If someone asks you **Tudo bem?** say **Tudo bom**. If it’s **Tudo bom?** answer back **Tudo bem**. Just use the expression opposite the one that the other person used. People commonly combine some of these phrases, like **Olá, tudo bom?** (*oh-lah, too-doh bong*; Hello, how are you?) or **Oi, tudo bem?** (*oh-ee, too-doh bong*; Hi, how are you?).

The quick way to say goodbye is simply to say **Tchau!** (*chow; Ciao!*). **Todo mundo** (*toh-doo moon-doh*; everyone. *Literally*: all world) in Brazil uses **Tchau**, in almost all situations. It’s not like in English, where *Ciao!* can sound a little snobby sometimes. In Brazil, **Tchau** is used by everyone from the guy selling **abacaxi** (*ah-bah-kah-shee*; pineapple) on the street to the **dono** (*doh-noo*; owner) of the restaurant where you’re eating.

It’s also very common in Brazil to say **Até** (*ah-teh*; until) plus another word when you think you’ll see the person **de novo** (*jee noh-voh*; again). If you only **memorizar** (*meh-moh-dee-zah*; memorize) one of the following phrases, pick **Até logo**. It never fails.

- ✓ **Até logo.** (ah-teh loh-goo; See you later.)
- ✓ **Até mais.** (ah-teh mah-eez; See you.)
- ✓ **Até amanhã.** (ah-teh ah-mahn-yah; See you tomorrow.)
- ✓ **Até a semana que vem.** (ah-teh ah seh-mah-nah kee vang; See you next week.)

Some people like to say religious phrases, too:

- ✓ **Fique com Deus.** (fee-kee kohng deh-ooz; Take care. *Literally:* Be with God.)
- ✓ **Adeus.** (ah-deh-oozh; Goodbye. *Literally:* To God.)

A gente se vê (ah zhang-chee see veh; See you around) is a common slang-sounding way of saying “bye” in a casual situation.

Introducing Yourself

Introducing yourself is easy as **torta de morango** (toh-tah jee moh-dahng-goh; strawberry pie). Here are a couple different ways to do it:

- ✓ **O meu nome é . . .** (ooh meh-oooh noh-mee eh; My name is . . .)
- ✓ **Eu sou o/a . . .** (eh-oooh soh ooh/ah; I’m . . .)

Use the *o* in front of your name if you’re male and the *a* if you’re female. Because *o* is the masculine way of saying “the” and *a* is the feminine “the,” saying **Eu sou a Karen** is like saying, “I’m the Karen.” It sounds **estranho** (eh-stdahn-yoh; weird) in English.

To ask someone his or her name, say **Qual é seu nome?** (kwah-oooh eh seh-oooh noh-mee; What’s your name?). After someone asks you for your name, you can say **E o seu?** (ee ooh seh-oooh; And yours?).

If you want to **apresentar** (ah-pdeh-zen-tah; introduce) friends or family members after you introduce yourself, say:

Este é . . . (*es-chee eh*; This is . . . [name of man])

Esta é . . . (*eh-stah eh*; This is . . . [name of woman])

Estes são . . . (*es-jeez sah-oooh*; These are . . . [names of multiple people])

Estas são . . . (*eh-stahz sah-oooh*; These are . . . [names of women])

Here are some common introductions:

- ✓ **Este é o meu amigo.** (*es-chee eh ooh meh-oooh ah-mee-goo*; This is my friend. [male])
- ✓ **Esta é a minha amiga.** (*eh-stah eh ah ming-yah ah-mee-gah*; This is my friend. [female])
- ✓ **Estes são os meus amigos.** (*es-cheez sah-oooh ooz meh-ooz ah-mee-gooz*; These are my friends. [group of all men or men and women])
- ✓ **Estas são as minhas amigas.** (*eh-stahz sah-oooh ahz ming-yahz ah-mee-gahz*; These are my friends. [group of all women])

First Names, Last Names, and Nicknames

So when someone says **Qual é seu nome?** she's after your first name. If she says **Qual é seu nome completo?** (*kwah-oooh eh seh-oooh nah-mee kohm-pleh-too*; What's your full name? *Literally*: What's your complete name?), then she's after both your **primeiro nome** (*pdee-may-doh nah-mee*; name) and **sobrenome** (*soh-bdee nah-mee*; surname. *Literally*: over-names).

Brazilians always use **o** or **a** before a person's name: **A Mônica** (*ah moh-nee-kah*), **a Cláudia** (*ah klah-oooh-jee-ah*), **o Nicolas** (*oooh nee-koh-lahs*), **o Roberto** (*oooh hoh-beh-too*). It's like saying "the Steve" or "the Diane."

Os brasileiros (oohz bdah-zee-lay-dohz; Brazilians) are pretty **informal** (een-foh-mah-ooh; informal). They call their president just **Lula**. No one — not even on news shows — calls him **Senhor da Silva**. If people want to be formal, they'd say **o Presidente Lula** (ooh pdeh-zee-dang-chee loo-lah) — that's like saying "President George" for George Bush.

Brazilians prefer to stick to **primeiros nomes** (first names) in general, but when the situation is more formal, they use the terms **Senhor** (seen-yoh; Mr.) and **Senhora** (seen-yoh-dah; Mrs.) pretty much just like you use "Mr." and "Mrs." in English. When you're talking to your elderly **vizinho** (vee-zeen-yoh; neighbor), he's **Senhor** so-and-so. When a **casal** (kah-zah-ooh; couple) walks in to a real estate agency, they're called **Senhor e Senhora** (seen-yoh ee seen-yoh-dah; Mr. and Mrs.) so-and-so.

Brazilians always use **o/a** (the) before saying "Mr." or "Mrs." It's like saying "the Mr. Oliveira." Weird, right? Well, here goes:

- ✓ **o Senhor Oliveira** (ooh seen-yoh oh-lee-vay-dah; Mr. Oliveira)
- ✓ **o Senhor da Silva** (ooh seen-yoh dah see-ooh-vah; Mr. da Silva)
- ✓ **a Senhora Tavares** (ah seen-yoh-dah tah-vah-deez; Mrs. Tavares)
- ✓ **a Senhora Gimenes** (ah seen-yoh-dah zhee-men-ez; Mrs. Gimenes)

Another difference is that in Brazil, it's common to use **Senhor** and **Senhora** for young people — even teenagers. There's no term like *Miss* for younger women. And it's also normal for people to say **Senhor David** or **Senhora Luciana** — using the first name instead of the last name.

Imagine you're talking to the concierge of your hotel. He treats you with respect because it's his job to serve you. He asks you the following questions if you're a man:

- ✓ **O senhor mora aqui?** (ooh seen-yoh moh-dah ah-kee; Do you live here?)
- ✓ **O senhor está cansado?** (ooh seen-yoh eh-stah kahn-sah-doo; Are you tired?)
- ✓ **O senhor gosta do restaurante?** (ooh seen-yoh goh-stah doo heh-stah-oo-dahn-chee; Do you like the restaurant?)

And he asks you these questions if you're a woman:

- ✓ **A senhora gosta de dançar?** (ah seen-yoh-dah goh-stah jee dahn-sah; Do you like to dance?)
- ✓ **A senhora é americana?** (ah seen-yoh-dah eh ah-meh-dee-kah-nah; Are you American?)
- ✓ **A senhora vai para a praia?** (ah seen-yoh-dah vah-ee pah-dah ah pdah-ee-ah; Are you going to the beach?)

Now imagine that the speaker who asked you all these questions is just another fellow traveler — a Brazilian one. All the **o senhor's** and the **a senhora's** become **você** (voh-seh; you [informal]). **Você** is what you call people when you don't need to be formal.

Knowing Who, What, and Where

Key to any conversation are the basic question words **onde** (ohn-jee; where), **quando** (kwahn-doh; when), and **quanto** (kwahn-toh; how much). If you want to ask someone what something means, say **O que quer dizer . . . ?** (ooh keh keh jee-zeh). It literally means "What does . . . mean to say?"

Here are some other basic words to help you find information:

- ✓ **o quê?** (ooh keh; what?)
- ✓ **quem?** (kang; who?)
- ✓ **por quê?** (poh-keh; why?)

- ✓ **como?** (*koh-moo*; how?)
- ✓ **qual?** (*kwah-ooh*; which?)

The following are examples of how to use these words:

- ✓ **O que é isso?** (*ooh keh eh ee-soh*; What is that?)
- ✓ **Onde fica a praia?** (*ohn-jee fee-kah ah pdah-ee-ah*; Where is the beach?)
- ✓ **Quando é o concerto?** (*kwahn-doh eh ooh kohn-seh-toh*; When is the concert?)
- ✓ **Quem é ele?** (*kang eh eh-lee*; Who is he?)
- ✓ **Por que é assim?** (*poh keh eh ah-sing*; Why is it like that?)
- ✓ **Como ela é?** (*koh-moo eh eh-lah*; What is she like?)
- ✓ **Quanto é?** (*kwahn-toh eh*; How much does it cost?)
- ✓ **Qual carro é seu?** (*kwah-ooh kah-hoh eh seh-ooh*; Which car is yours?)

“Where Are You From?”

The first question you’re likely to be asked in Brazil is **De onde você é?** (*jee ohng-jee voh-seh eh*; Where are you from?). Brazilians are very proud that people from all over the **mundo** (*moon-doh*; world) come to visit their country. They’re always curious to imagine how **longe** (*lohn-zhee*; far) you came. They may also ask **De que país você é?** (*jee kee pah-eez voh-seh eh*; Which country are you from?).

Here’s how you can answer:

- ✓ **Eu sou inglês** (*eh-ooh soh eeng-gleh-z*; I’m English.)
- ✓ **Eu sou da Inglaterra** (*eh-ooh soh dah eeng-glah-teh-hah*; I’m from England.)

Here are some countries and nationalities that you may find useful:

- ✓ **Estados Unidos** (ehs-tah-dooz ooh-nee-dooz; United States)
- ✓ **americano/a** (ah-meh-dee-kahn-oh/ah; American)
- ✓ **Canadá** (kah-nah-dah; Canada)
- ✓ **canadense** (kah-nah-dehn-see; Canadian)
- ✓ **Inglaterra** (eeng-glah-teh-hah; England)
- ✓ **inglês/inglesa** (eeng-gleh-z/gleh-sah; English)
- ✓ **Austrália** (ah-oo-stdah-lee-ah; Australia)
- ✓ **australiano/a** (ah-oo-stdah-lee-ah-noh/nah; Australian)
- ✓ **Alemanha** (ah-leh-mahn-yah; Germany)
- ✓ **alemão/ã** (ah-leh-mah-oooh/mah; German)
- ✓ **França** (fdahn-sah; France)
- ✓ **francês/francesa** (fdahn-sehz/fdahn-seh-zah; French)
- ✓ **China** (shee-nah; China)
- ✓ **chinês/chinesa** (shee-nehz/shee-neh-zah; Chinese)
- ✓ **Japão** (zhah-pah-oooh; Japan)
- ✓ **japonês/japonesa** (zhah-poh-nez/zhah-poh-nes-ah; Japanese)



Don't be surprised if a Brazilian from a touristy place like Rio responds **Eu já sabia** (eh-oooh jah sah-bee-ah; I knew it) when you say which country you're from. With so many tourists around, Brazilians get plenty of practice at pinpointing nationalities.

And a tip while I'm talking about Americans: A few Brazilians get offended by the term **americano**. They say, "We're Americans, too!" These folks prefer the term **norte-americano** (noh-chee-ah-meh-dee-kah-noh; North American).

Brazilians often tell you where they're from by using the nickname for people from their city or state. Here are the most common ones:

- ✓ **gaúcho/a** (gah-oooh-shoh/ah; someone from Rio Grande do Sul state)
- ✓ **paulistano/a** (pow-lee-stahn-oh/ah; someone from the city of São Paulo)
- ✓ **paulista** (pow-lee-stah; someone from São Paulo state)
- ✓ **carioca** (kah-dee-oh-kah; someone from the city of Rio)
- ✓ **baiano/a** (bah-ee-ah-noh/ah; someone from Bahia state)
- ✓ **mineiro/a** (mee-nay-doh/ah; someone from Minas Gerais state)



Gente boa is a very common phrase in Brazil. It's used to describe people who are laid-back and down-to-earth. It literally means "good people," but you can use it to describe one person or a group of people. Here are a couple phrases you can use to win Brazilian friends:

- ✓ **Você é gente boa.** (voh-seh eh zhang-chee boh-ah; You're a really cool person.)
- ✓ **Os seus amigos são muito gente boa.** (oohz say-oohz ah-mee-gohz sah-oooh moo-ee-toh zhang-chee boh-ah; Your friends are really great.)

Here's a sample conversation:

Juliana: **Tudo bem? De onde você é?** (too-doh bang? jee ohn-jee voh-seh eh? How are you? Where are you from?)

Samir: **Sou americano.** (soh ah-meh-dee-kahn-oh; I'm American.)

Juliana: **De que lugar?** (jee kee loo-gah? From whereabouts?)

Samir: **De Ohio. E você, é daqui?** (jee oh-hah-ee-oh. ee voh-seh, eh dah-kee? From Ohio. And you, are you from here?)

Juliana: **Sim, sou gaúcha. De onde vem?** (sing, soh gah-ooh-shah. jee ohn-jee vang? Yes, I'm Gaúcha [from Rio Grande do Sul state]. Where are you coming from?)

Samir: **Do Rio. Vou passar uma semana aqui no Rio Grande do Sul.** (Doo hee-ooh. voh pah-sah ooh-mah seh-mah-nah ah-kee noh hee-ooh gdahn-jee doo soo. From Rio. I'm going to stay here in Rio Grande do Sul for a week.)

Juliana: **Ótimo. Está gostando do Brasil?** (ah-chee-moh. ehs-tah goh-stahn-doh doh bdah-zee-ooh? Great. Are you liking Brazil?)

Samir: **É claro! Estou adorando este país.** (eh klah-doh! ehs-toh ah-doh-dahn-doh eh-schee pah-eez; Of course! I'm loving this country.)

Words to Know

De que lugar?	jee kee loo- <u>gah</u>	From where-abouts?
De onde vem?	jee ohn-jee <u>vang</u>	Which part of Brazil have you just been to?
Está gostando do Brasil?	eh-stah gohs- <u>tahn</u> -doh doh bdah- <u>zee</u> -ooh	Are you liking Brazil?
Estou adorando este país.	ehs-toh ah-doh-dahn-doh eh-schee pah-eez	I'm loving this country.

Describing the World around You

Brazilians use **ser** (seh; to be) to describe the permanent qualities of someone or something: “New York is an island.” “New York is big.” “New York is pretty.” “She is married.” “He is from New York.” “He is rich and nice.” The verb **estar** (eh-stah; to be) is used in situations where the quality being described is temporary, like being tired. Say you’re talking about your friend Ana, who has a rich husband. Don’t worry yourself over questions like “What if Ana’s husband goes bankrupt tomorrow?” or “What if Ana gets divorced tomorrow?” Just remember the decade rule: If the quality you’re talking about seems like it will last another ten years, use **ser**.

Describing permanent qualities: Ser

The verb **ser** (seh) is the one most often used in Portuguese. It’s an irregular verb (look at Chapter 2 for a quickie lesson on verbs). But it’s the easiest irregular verb there is in Portuguese. Check it out:

Conjugation Pronunciation

Eu sou	eh-oooh so
Você é	voh-she eh
Ele/ela é	eh-lah/eh-lee eh
Nós somos	nohz soh-mooz
Eles/elas são	eh-leez/eh-lahz sah-oooh

I talked about what she looks like (physical characteristics), what her profession is, and where she’s from.

- ✓ **Ela é** (eh-lah eh; She is)
- ✓ **alta** (ah-oooh-tah; tall)
- ✓ **bonita** (boo-nee-tah; pretty)
- ✓ **loira** (loy-dah; blonde)

- ✓ **rica** (*hee-kah*; rich)
- ✓ **uma modelo** (*ooh-mah moh-deh-loh*; a model)
- ✓ **do Rio Grande do Sul** (*doo hee-ooh gdahn-jee doo soo*; from Rio Grande do Sul state)

Now that you know the verb **ser**, you can say a ton of things:

- ✓ **Eu sou homem.** (*eh-ooh so oh-mang*; I am a man.)
- ✓ **Eu sou da Califórnia.** (*eh-ooh so dah kah-lee-foh-nee-ah*; I am from California.)
- ✓ **Ele é muito alto.** (*eh-lee eh moo-ee-toh ah-ooh-toh*; He is very tall.)
- ✓ **Nós somos amigos.** (*nohz soh-mooz ah-mee-gooz*; We are friends.)
- ✓ **Elas são simpáticas.** (*eh-lahz sah-ooh seem-pah-chee-kahz*; Those women are nice.)
- ✓ **Ela é jovem.** (*eh-lah eh zhoh-vang*; She is young.)
- ✓ **Nós somos da Austrália.** (*nohz soh-mooz dah ah-ooh-stah-lee-ah*; We are from Australia.)
- ✓ **Eles são inteligentes.** (*eh-leez sah-ooh een-teh-lee-zhang-cheez*; They are smart.)

As you can see, **ser** goes perfectly with descriptions of things and people. Now glance at some basic description words you can use with **ser**; take a look at Table 4-1. These words are sure to come in handy.

Table 4-1 **Adjectives Describing Permanent States**

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
alto	<i>ah-ooh-toh</i>	tall
baixo	<i>bah-ee-shoh</i>	short (height)
caro	<i>kah-doh</i>	expensive

(continued)

Table 4-1 (continued)

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
barato	bah-dah-toh	cheap
bom	boh-oong	good
mau	mah-ooh;	bad
curto	kooh-toh	short (length)
comprido	koom-pdee-doh	long
pequeno	peh-keh-noh	small
grande	gdahn-jee	big
fácil	fah-see-ooh	easy
difícil	jee-fee-see-ooh	difficult
divertido	jee-veh-chee-doo	fun
chato	shah-toh	boring/annoying
gordo	goh-doh	fat
magro	mah-gdoh	thin
jovem	zhoh-vang	young
velho	vehl-yoh	old

Take a look at this short exchange between friends:

Marco: **E como é Nova Iorque?** (eh koh-moh eh noh-vah yoh-kee? And what's New York like?)

Ana: **É muito grande. Também é muito bonita.** (eh moh-ee toh gdahn-jee. tahm-bang eh moh-ee-toh boo-nee-tah; It's really big. It's also really pretty.)

Marco: **É uma ilha, né?** (eh ooh-mah eel-yah, neh? It's an island, right?)

Ana: **Manhattan é uma ilha.** (Mahn-hah-tahn eh ooh-mah eel-yah; Manhattan is an island.)

Marco: **E foi para visitar a sua irmã, né?** (ee foh-ee pah-dah vee-see-tah ah soo-ah ee-mah, neh? And you went to visit your sister, right?)

Ana: **É. Ela é muito legal.** (eh. eh-lah eh moh-ee-toh leh-gow; Yeah. She's really cool.)

Marco: **Ela é casada?** (eh-lah eh kah-zah-dah? Is she married?)

Ana: **É. O marido dela é de Nova Iorque.** (eh. ooh mah-dee-doh deh-lah eh dah noh-vah yoh-kee. Yeah. Her husband is from New York.)

Marco: **Como ele é?** (koh-moh eh-lee eh? What is he like?)

Ana: **É rico e simpático!** (eh hee-koo ee seem-pah-chee-koh! He's rich and nice!)

Words to Know

Como é . . . ?	koh-moh <u>eh</u>	What is . . . like?
Nova Iorque	noh-vah <u>yoh</u> -kee	New York
muito	moh- <u>ee</u> -toh	really/very
grande	<u>gdahn</u> -jee	big
também	tahm- <u>bang</u>	too/also
ilha	<u>eel</u> -yah	island
foi	<u>foh</u> -ee	you went
para	<u>pah</u> -dah	in order to
visitar	vee-zee- <u>tah</u>	to visit

continued

Words to Know (continued)

irmã	ee- <u>mah</u>	sister
legal	leh- <u>gow</u>	cool
casada	kah- <u>zah</u> -dah	married
marido	mah- <u>dee</u> -doh	husband



If you want to sound a little more like a native speaker, use **né** at the end of a sentence to mean “Right?” (particularly in informal situations). **Né** is the contraction of **não é** (*nah-oooh eh*; *Literally*: is not), which can be used to mean the same thing as well. And use **É** at the beginning of a sentence to affirm a question someone just asked you. These words aren’t necessary for you to learn, but they’re fun, and Brazilians use them all the time!

Describing temporary qualities: *Estar*

The verb **estar** (*eh-stah*) is used most often to describe mood or physical state or physical location. Use **estar** to say you’re **nervoso** (*neh-voh-zoo*; nervous) about something, that you’re **doente** (*doh-en-chee*; sick), or that you’re at the **banco** (*bahn-koh*; bank). Tomorrow, you may be “happy,” “well,” and “at work”!

To find out the different forms of **estar**, take a look:

Conjugation Pronunciation

Eu estou	<i>eh-oooh eh-stoh</i>
Você está	<i>voh-seh eh-stah</i>
Ele/ela está	<i>eh-lee/eh-lah eh-stah</i>
Nós estamos	<i>nohz eh-stah-mohz</i>
Eles/elas estão	<i>eh-leez/eh-lahz eh-stah-oooh</i>

Here are some phrases using **estar**:

- ✓ **Ela está com fome.** (*eh-lah eh-stah kong foh-mee*; She is hungry.)
- ✓ **Você está gordinha.** (*voh-seh eh-stah goh-jing-yah*; You are a little chubby.)
- ✓ **Ela está com os sapatos vermelhos.** (*eh-lah eh-stah kohng ooz sah-pah-tooze veh-mel-yooz*; She is wearing red shoes.)
- ✓ **Nós estamos em Roma.** (*nohz eh-stah-mohz ang hoh-mah*; We are in Rome.)
- ✓ **Ela está de férias.** (*eh-lah eh-stah jee feh-dee-ahz*; She is on vacation.)
- ✓ **Nós estamos com fome.** (*nohz eh-stah-mohz kohng foh-mee*; We are hungry.)
- ✓ **Eu estou triste.** (*eh-oooh eh-stoh tdees-chee*; I am sad.)
- ✓ **Ela está no carro.** (*eh-lah eh-stah noh kah-hoh*; She is in the car.)
- ✓ **Eu estou em casa.** (*eh-oooh eh-stoh ang kah-zah*; I am at home.)
- ✓ **Eles estão no Brasil.** (*eh-leez eh-stah-oooh noh bdah-zee-oooh*; They are in Brazil.)

Speaking about Speaking

Now onto a really easy, fun verb: **falar** (*fah-lah*; to speak/to talk). Talking is, after all, how to really learn a language!

One of the most important phrases using **falar** is **Como se fala . . . ?** (*koh-moo see fah-lah*; How do you say . . . ?). This great phrase got me out of many linguistic jams.

You also use **falar** to refer to languages:

Eu falo inglês. (*eh-oooh fah-loh eeng-gleh-z*; I speak English.)

Take a look at Table 4-2 for a rundown of how to say the names of some of the world's major languages.

Table 4-2 **Some of the World's Major Languages**

<i>Language</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
inglês	eeng- <i>glehz</i>	English
português	<i>poh-too-gez</i>	Portuguese
português de Portugal	<i>poh-too-gez jee poh--too gah-ooh</i>	Portuguese from Portugal
português do Brasil	<i>poh-too-gez doh bdah-zee-ooh</i>	Brazilian Portuguese
espanhol	eh-spahn- <i>yoh-ooh</i>	Spanish
russo	<i>hoo-soh</i>	Russian
chinês	shee- <i>nehz</i>	Chinese
francês	<i>fdahn-sehz</i>	French
italiano	ee-tah-lee- <i>ah-noh</i>	Italian
alemão	ah-leh- <i>mah-ooh</i>	German
árabe	<i>ah-dah-bee</i>	Arabic
hebreu	eh- <i>bdeh-ooh</i>	Hebrew

Some Brazilians prefer to say they speak **brasileiro** (bdah-zee-lay-doh; Brazilian) instead of **português** or **português do Brasil**.

Here are some easy ways to use **falar**:

- ✓ **Eu gostaria de falar chinês.** (*eh-ooh goh-stah-dee-ah jee fah-lah shee-nehz*; I would like to speak Chinese.)

- ✓ **Você fala muito rápido!** (voh-seh *fah*-lah moh-ee-toh *hah*-pee-doh; You talk really fast!)
- ✓ **Na reunião, nós falamos durante cinco horas!** (*nah* hay-oooh-nee-ah-oooh nohz *fah*-lah-mohz doo-dahn-chee *sing*-koh oh-dahz; During the meeting, we talked for five hours!)
- ✓ **Elas falam muito bem.** (eh-lahz *fah*-lah-oooh moh-ee-toh *bang*; They speak really well.)
- ✓ **É difícil falar o francês?** (eh jee-fee-see-oooh *fah*-lah ooh fdahn-sehz? Is it hard to speak French?)
- ✓ **Eu adoro falar o português.** (*eh*-oooh ah-doh-doo *fah*-lah ooh poh-too-gez. I love speaking Portuguese.)
- ✓ **Você fala quantas línguas?** (voh-seh *fah*-lah *kwahn*-tuz *ling*-gwahz; How many languages do you speak?)

The Good, the Bad, and the Humid: Weather

Though the **clima** (*klee*-mah; weather) in some parts of Brazil is nearly the same year-round, you'll find that Brazilians talk about the weather just as much as people from countries with more dramatic weather.

In southern Brazil, and as far north as São Paulo, the **inverno** (*een*-veh-noo; winter) can get very **frio** (*fdee*-oooh; chilly). It even **neva** (*neh*-vah; snows) some years in Rio Grande do Sul state, the southernmost part of the country. In northern and northeastern Brazil, the concept of having **quatro estações** (*kwah*-tdoh eh-stah-soh-eez; four seasons) seems very foreign to locals. For them, there are just two seasons: **temporada de chuva** (temp-oh-dah-dah jee *shoo*-vah; rainy season) and **temporada seca** (temp-oh-dah-dah *seh*-kah; dry season). At many schools across Brazil, instructors teach children only about **verão** (*veh*-dah-oooh; summer) and **inverno**.

Here are a few more seasonal terms:

- ✓ **outono** (oh ooh-toh-noo; autumn)
- ✓ **primavera** (pdee-mah-veh-dah; spring)
- ✓ **estação** (ehs-tah-sah-ooh; season)

Here's a conversation people might have about the weather in Brazil:

Vinicius: **Que calor! Estava esperando chuva.** (kee kah-loh! ehs-dah-vah ehs-peh-dahn-doh shoo-vah; It's so hot! I was expecting rain.)

Worker: **Não é só chuva aqui como todo mundo pensa.** (nah-ooh eh soh shoo-vah ah-kee koh-moh toh-doo moon-doh pen-sah; It's not all rain here like everyone thinks.)

Vinicius: **Porque estamos em temporada de chuva, né?** (poh-keh ehs-tahm-ohz ang tem-poh-dah-dah jee shoo-vah, neh? Because we're in the rainy season, right?)

Worker: **Estamos. Na verdade, não é típico ter sol em julho.** (ehs-tah-mohz. nah veh-dah-jee nah-ooh eh chee-pee-koh teh soh-ooh ang joo-lee-oh. We are. Actually, it's not normal to have sun in July.)

Vinicius: **Tenho sorte, então.** (tang-yoh soh-chee, en-tah-ooh; I'm lucky, then.)

Worker: **Sim, mas quem sabe — pela tarde pode precisar de um guarda-chuva.** (sing, mah-eez kang sah-bee — peh-lah tah-jee poh-jee pdeh-see-zah jee oong goo-ah-dah shoo-vah; Yeah, but who knows — in the afternoon you may need an umbrella.)

Vinicius: **Obrigado pela dica. Vou levar um.** (ohb-dee-gah-doh peh-lah jee-kah. voh leh-vah oong; Thanks for the tip. I'll bring one along.)

Words to Know

sol	<u>s</u> oh-ooH	sun
quente	<u>k</u> ang-chee	hot
calor	kah- <u>l</u> oh	heat
frio	<u>f</u> dee-ooH	cold
chuva	<u>s</u> hoo-vah	rain
chover	shoh- <u>v</u> eh	to rain
guarda-chuva	goo- <u>a</u> h-dah <u>s</u> hoo-vah	umbrella
nuvens	<u>n</u> oo-vangz	clouds
úmido	<u>o</u> oh-mee-doh	humid
a umidade	ah ooh-mee- <u>d</u> ah-jee	humidity

Figuring Out Family Connections

Brazilian families are very tight-knit; they tend to live in the same cities as their **pais** (*pah-eez*; parents) and **irmãos** (*ee-mah-ooHz*; siblings/brothers and sisters) and to see each other at least once a week.

Take a look at Table 4-3 for more words to express family **relações** (*heh-lah-soh-eez*; relationships).

Table 4-3 Relatives

<i>Portuguese Word</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>English Word</i>
irmão	ee-mah-ooH	brother
irmã	ee-mah	sister

(continued)

Table 4-3 (continued)

<i>Portuguese Word</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>English Word</i>
primo	<i>pdee-moh</i>	male cousin
prima	<i>pdee-mah</i>	female cousin
primos	<i>pdee-mooz</i>	cousins
avô	<i>ah-vah</i>	grandfather
avó	<i>ah-voh</i>	grandmother
avós	<i>ah-vohz</i>	grandparents
filho	<i>feel-yoo</i>	son
filha	<i>feel-yah</i>	daughter
filhos	<i>feel-yooz</i>	children
marido	<i>mah-dee-doh</i>	husband
mulher	<i>mool-yeh</i>	wife
neto	<i>neh-toh</i>	grandson
neta	<i>neh-tah</i>	granddaughter



In Brazil, street kids often call any adult **tia** (*chee-ah*; aunt) or **tio** (*chee-ooh*; uncle) — especially when they're asking for money or for help. If you find yourself in this situation, it's okay to give the child a small amount of money. Otherwise, just say, **Não posso** (*nah-ooh poh-soo*; I can't).

Giving Out Your Contact Information

After your first conversation with new friends, you may decide you'd like to keep in contact with them. Or they may ask you **Qual o seu número de telefone?**

(*kwah-oo ooh seh-oo noo-meh-doh jee teh-leh-fohn-ee*; What's your phone number?) You respond **O meu número de telefone é . . .** (*ooh meh-oo noo-meh-doh jee teh-leh-foh-nee eh*; My phone number is . . .).

Here are some other questions you can ask them. Notice the use of **seu** (your) and **meu** (my), which I talk about earlier in this chapter:

- ✓ **Qual é o seu sobrenome?** (*kwah-oooh eh ooh seh-oo soh-bdee-noh-mee*; What's your last name?)
- ✓ **Onde mora?** (*ohn-jee moh-dah*; Where do you live?)
- ✓ **Qual é o seu e-mail?** (*kwah-oooh eh ooh seh-oo ee-may-oh*; What's your e-mail?)

And here's how you can respond if you're asked these questions:

- ✓ **O meu sobrenome é . . .** (*ooh meh-oo soh-bdee-noh-mee eh*; My last name is . . .)
- ✓ **Eu moro . . .** (*eh-oooh moh-doo*; I live . . .)
- ✓ **O meu e-mail é . . .** (*ooh meh-oo ee-may-oh eh*; My e-mail is . . .)

Chapter 5

Enjoying a Drink and a Snack (or Meal!)

In This Chapter

- ▶ Discussing food basics
- ▶ Enjoying the restaurant experience

Está com fome? (eh-stah koh-oong foh-mee; Are you hungry?). ***Quer comer?*** (keh koh-meh; Do you want to eat?). This chapter helps you become acquainted with Brazilian cuisine and how to order it, talk about it, and enhance your enjoyment of it.

Bom Appetite! Enjoy Your Meal!

Mastering the dining basics is essential. But before you take a seat at the **mesa** (meh-zah; table), check out some of these place-setting terms:

- ✓ **garfo** (gah-foh; fork)
- ✓ **faca** (fah-kah; knife)
- ✓ **colher** (kool-yeh; spoon)
- ✓ **prato** (pdah-toh; plate)
- ✓ **prato fundo** (pdah-toh foon-doh; bowl)
- ✓ **copo** (koh-poo; cup/glass)
- ✓ **guardanapo** (gwah-dah-nah-poh; napkin)

Following are some basic items that you may want to **pedir** (peh-jee; ask for) at a **restaurante** (heh-stah-ooh-dahn-chee; restaurant) or someone's **casa** (kah-zah; house):

- ✓ **sal** (sah-ooh; salt)
- ✓ **pimenta do reino** (pee-mehn-tah doo hay-noo; black pepper)
- ✓ **pimenta** (pee-mehn-tah; Brazilian hot sauce [hot red peppers soaking in oil]. *Literally*: pepper)
- ✓ **limão** (lee-mah-ooh; lime [Brazilians squeeze **limão** on everything!])
- ✓ **pão** (pah-ooh; bread)
- ✓ **gelo** (zheh-loh; ice)

Here are some useful phrases that you can use to talk about food:

- ✓ **Eu adoro chocolate!** (eh-ooh ah-doh-doo shoh-koh-lah-chee; I love chocolate! *Literally*: I adore chocolate!)
- ✓ **Eu detesto ovos.** (eh-ooh deh-teh-stoh oh-vooz; I hate eggs. *Literally*: I detest eggs.)
- ✓ **Qual a sua comida favorita?** (kwah-ooh ah soo-ah koh-mee-dah fah-voh-dee-tah; What's your favorite food?)
- ✓ **Que tipo de comida gosta?** (kee chee-poh jee koh-mee-dah goh-stah; What type of food do you like?)
- ✓ **Qual prefere — a comida indiana ou a comida chinesa?** (kwah-ooh pdeh-feh-dee — ah koh-mee-dah een-djee-ah-nah oh-ooh ah koh-mee-dah shee-neh-sah; Which do you prefer — Indian or Chinese food?)
- ✓ **Você gosta de cozinhar?** (voh-seh goh-stah jee koh-zing-yah; Do you like to cook?)
- ✓ **Pode recomendar um bom restaurante por aqui?** (poh-jee heh-koh-mehn-dah oong boh-oong heh-stah-ooh-dahn-chee poh ah-kee; Can you recommend a good restaurant around here?)

Take a look at how to say the basic meals and parts of meals:

- ✓ **café da manhã** (kah-feh dah mahn-yah; breakfast. *Literally*: morning's coffee)
- ✓ **almoço** (ah-ooh-moh-soo; lunch)
- ✓ **jantar** (zhahn-tah; dinner)
- ✓ **entrada** (ehn-tdah-dah; appetizer. *Literally*: entry)
- ✓ **sobremesa** (soh-bdee-meh-zah; dessert)

And these are some phrases you can say at the table:

- ✓ **Que gostoso!** (kee gohs-toh-zoo; How amazingly delicious!)
- ✓ **É delicioso.** (eh deh-lee-see-oh-zoo; It's delicious.)
- ✓ **Está quente.** (eh-stah kang-chee; It's hot.)
- ✓ **Está frio.** (es-stah fdee-oh; It's cold.)
- ✓ **Bom apetite!** (boh-oong ah-peh-tee-chee; Bon appétit!)
- ✓ **Saúde!** (sah-oo-jee; Cheers! *Literally*: Health!)



Brazilians often just say **Quer?** (keh; Do you want?) to ask whether you want something. They may offer you a bite of their food by pointing to it and saying **Quer?**

At the Restaurant: Trying Local Foods

The classic Brazilian **comida** (koh-mee-dah; meal/food) is **simples** (seem-pleez; basic). It's a piece of **carne** (kah-nee; beef) served with **feijão** (fay-zhow; beans), **arroz** (ah-hohz; rice), and **salada** (sah-lah-dah; salad). In this section, I explore the restaurant experience and the food you can find there.

You can get a **refeição** (heh-fay-sah-oo; meal) at five basic places in Brazil:

- ✓ **boteco** (boo-teh-koo; cheap restaurant where people also go to drink beer or take shots of liquor)
- ✓ **padaria** (pah-dah-dee-ah; bakery [at Brazilian **padarias**, you can also sit down for a meal])
- ✓ **lanchonete** (lahn-shoh-neh-chee; restaurant that specializes in hamburgers, sandwiches, and fruit juices)
- ✓ **restaurante por quilo** (heh-stah-oooh-dahn-chee poh kee-loh; self-serve buffet, pay per kilo [these are delicious, healthy, and cheap in Brazil])
- ✓ **restaurante** (heh-stah-oooh-dahn-chee; restaurant)

The first four options are for quick meals. They generally offer **sanduíches** (sahn-dwee-sheez; sandwiches), **hambúrgueres** (ahm-booh-geh-dez; hamburgers), **salgados** (sah-oooh-gah-dohz; savory pastries), and **pratos feitos** (pdah-tohz fay-tohz; a combo plate, usually rice, beans, meat, and salad).



If you need to go to the bathroom in a **restaurante**, you can just say **O banheiro?** (ooh bahn-yay-doh; The bathroom?). To be fancier, you can say **Por favor, onde fica o banheiro?** (poh fah-voh ohn-jee fee-kah ooh bahn-yay-doh; Where is the bathroom, please?)

Ordering at a restaurant

When you arrive at a **restaurante** (heh-stah-oooh-dahn-chee; restaurant), the **garçom** (gah-sohng; waiter) or **garçonete** (gah-soh-neh-chee; waitress) leads you to a **mesa** (meh-zah; table). He or she may ask you whether you want to **sentar** (sehn-tah; sit) **fora** (foh-dah; outside) or **dentro** (dehn-tдох; inside).

Then the waiter or waitress gives you the **cardápio** (kah-dah-pee-oh; menu). You may see these sections:

- ✓ **entradas** (ehn-tdah-dahz; starters)
- ✓ **pratos principais** (pdah-tohz pdeen-see-pah-eez; main dishes)
- ✓ **bebidas** (beh-bee-dahz; drinks)
- ✓ **sobremesas** (soh-bdee-meh-zahz; desserts)
- ✓ **especialidades da casa** (eh-speh-see-ah-lee-dah-jeez dah kah-zah; house specialties)

When you're **pronto** (pdohn-toh; ready) to **pedir** (peh-jeeh; order. *Literally*: to ask for), you can just say either

- ✓ **Quero . . . por favor** (keh-doo . . . poh-fah-voh; I want . . . please)
- ✓ **Vou querer. . .** (voh keh-deh; I will have. . . *Literally*: I will want. . .)

If you don't know what you want, you can ask the **garçom O que recomenda?** (ooh keh heh-koh-mehn-dah; What do you recommend?). If you want to go with what is recommended, say **OK, tá bom** (oh-kay tah boh-oong; Okay, I'll go with that. *Literally*: That's good.).

If you want to ask for something specific, say **Tem . . . ?** (tang; Do you have . . . ?). You can fill in the blank with one of the following words or phrases:

- ✓ **sopa** (soh-pah; soup)
- ✓ **salada** (sah-lah-dah; salad)
- ✓ **sanduíches** (sahn-doo-ee-sheez; sandwiches)
- ✓ **algo para crianças** (ah-ooh-goh pah-dah kdee-ahn-sahz; something for kids)
- ✓ **pratos vegetarianos** (pdah-tohz veh-zeh-teh-dee-ah-nohz; vegetarian dishes)

You can also use **Tem . . . ?** to ask whether a **prato** (pdah-toh; dish) contains a specific **ingrediente** (eeng-gdeh-jee-ehn-chee; ingredient) that you may or may not want:

- ✓ **Tem carne?** (tang *kah-nee*; Does it have meat in it?)
- ✓ **Tem frutos do mar?** (tang *fdoo-tohz doo mah*; Does it have any seafood in it?)
- ✓ **Tem azeite de dendê?** (tang *ah-zay-chee jee dehn-deh*; Does it have palm oil?)

If you know a **prato** has a specific **ingrediente** that you want **retirado** (heh-chee-*dah-doh*; taken out), say **sem . . .** (sang; without . . .). You can fill in the blank with one of the following words:

- ✓ **queijo** (*kay-zhoh*; cheese)
- ✓ **manteiga** (*mahn-tay-gah*; butter)
- ✓ **maionese** (*mah-ee-oh-neh-zee*; mayonnaise)
- ✓ **leite** (*lay-chee*; milk)
- ✓ **açúcar** (*ah-soo-kah*; sugar)
- ✓ **cebola** (*seh-boh-lah*; onion)
- ✓ **molho** (*mohl-yoh*; sauce)
- ✓ **óleo** (*oh-lay-oh*; vegetable oil)
- ✓ **alho** (*ahl-yoh*; garlic)

If you like your **carne** (*kah-nee*; meat) a certain way, you can ask for it to be

- ✓ **grelhada** (*gdeh-oooh-yah-dah*; grilled)
- ✓ **cozida** (*koh-zee-dah*; boiled)
- ✓ **frito** (*fdee-toh*; fried)
- ✓ **assado** (*ah-sah-doh*; sautéed)

Brazilian food is not **picante** (*pee-kahn-chee*; spicy). But you can ask for **pimenta** (*pee-mehn-tah*; hot chilies soaked in oil) or **molho de pimenta** (*mohl-yoh jee pee-mehn-tah*; hot sauce).

Ordering a drink

To help you wash down all the wonderful Brazilian food, you may want one of the following **bebidas** (beh-bee-dahz; drinks):

- ✓ **água sem gás** (ah-gwah sang gahz; still mineral water)
- ✓ **água com gás** (ah-gwah koh-oong gahz; sparkling mineral water)
- ✓ **Guaraná Antarctica** (gwah-dah-nah ahn-tah-chee-kah; Brazil's most popular brand-name soda, made from the Amazonian berry **guaraná** — **Antarctica** is the brand name)
- ✓ **Guaraná diet** (gwah-dah-nah dah-ee-chee; diet Guaraná)
- ✓ **Coca-Cola** (koh-kah koh-lah; Coke)
- ✓ **Coca light** (koh-kah lah-ee-chee; Diet Coke)
- ✓ **cerveja** (seh-veh-zhah; can of beer)
- ✓ **chope** (shoh-pee; light draft beer)
- ✓ **vinho** (ving-yoo; wine)
- ✓ **café** (kah-feh; coffee)
- ✓ **chá** (shah; tea)
- ✓ **leite** (lay-chee; milk)

If you go to a bar in Brazil, you may notice people saying **Mais um** (mah-eez oong) or **Mais uma** (mah-eez ooh-mah) a lot. The phrases mean “I’ll have another” (*Literally*: More one).

The national drink of Brazil is the **caipirinha** (kah-ee-pee-deen-yah). It’s made with **cachaça** (kah-shah-sah; sugarcane liquor), **gelo** (zheh-loh; ice), **limão** (lee-mah-ooh; lime) and **açúcar** (ah-soo-kah; sugar). You can also order a **caipifruta** (kah-ee-pee-fdoo-tah) — a caipirinha made from a fruit of your choice, instead of lime.

Brazilians love their juice and the average **restaurante** (heh-stah-oooh-*dahn*-chee; restaurant) has between 10 and 20 types of **sucos** (soo-kohz; fruit juices) to choose from. If you want to ask for the fruit in **suco** form, say **suco de . . .** (soo-koh *jee*; juice of . . .). Just plug one of these fruits into the blank:

- ✓ **laranja** (lah-*dahn*-zhah; orange)
- ✓ **abacaxi** (ah-bah-kah-*shee*; pineapple)
- ✓ **mamão** (mah-*mah*-oooh; papaya)
- ✓ **melancia** (meh-lahn-*see*-ah; watermelon)
- ✓ **goiaba** (goy-*ah*-bah; guava)
- ✓ **maracujá** (mah-dah-koo-*zhah*; passion fruit)
- ✓ **manga** (*mahn*-gah; mango)

My favorite **suco** is **cupuaçu** (koo-poo-ah-soo; milky white Amazonian fruit with a tangy taste).

Here are some helpful phrases that use the two drinking verbs **beber** and **tomar**:

- ✓ **É preciso beber muita água todos os dias.** (eh pdeh-*see*-zoh beh-*beh* moh-*ee*-tah ah-gwah toh-dooz ooz *jee*-ahz; It's necessary to drink a lot of water every day.)
- ✓ **Ele bebe muito.** (eh-lee beh-*bee* moh-*ee*-toh; He drinks a lot [of alcohol].)
- ✓ **O que quer para beber?** (ooh kee *keh* pah-dah beh-*beh*; What do you want to drink?)
- ✓ **Gostaria de tomar uma Coca-Cola?** (gohs-tah-dee-ah jee toh-*mah* ooh-*mah* koh-kah *koh*-lah; Would you like to have a Coke?)
- ✓ **Vamos tomar um drinque.** (vah-mohz toh-*mah* oong *dreeng*-kee; Let's have a drink/cocktail.)

First foods up: Salads and condiments

Saladas (sah-lah-dahz; salads) in Brazil are very basic if they come with your meal. But the salad bars, on the other hand, are stocked full of interesting items.

Brazilians tend not to mix salad ingredients like people do in the United States. Instead, they usually put the items side by side and then drizzle olive oil and red wine vinegar on top.

Here are some typical Brazilian items that you can expect to see at the salad bar:

- ✓ **alface** (ah-oooh-fah-see; lettuce)
- ✓ **rúcula** (hoo-koo-lah; arugula)
- ✓ **tomate** (toh-mah-chee; tomato)
- ✓ **tomate seco** (toh-mah-chee seh-koh; sun-dried tomato)
- ✓ **milho** (meew-yoh; corn)
- ✓ **palmito** (pah-oooh-mee-toh; heart of palm)
- ✓ **cenoura** (seh-noh-dah; carrots)
- ✓ **cebola** (seh-boh-lah; onion)
- ✓ **beterraba** (beh-teh-hah-bah; beets)
- ✓ **abobrinha** (ah-boh-bdeeng-yah; zucchini)
- ✓ **mozzarella de búfala** (moh-tzah-deh-lah jee boo-fah-lah; fresh mozzarella)
- ✓ **queijo** (kay-zhoh; cheese)
- ✓ **azeite de oliva** (ah-zay-chee jee oh-lee-vah; olive oil)
- ✓ **vinagre** (vee-nah-gdee; red wine vinegar)
- ✓ **vinagrete** (vee-nah-gdeh-chee; chopped tomato, onion, and green bell pepper, with vinegar.
Literally: vinaigrette [Brazilians put **vinagrete** on barbecued meat])



A note about **alface**: Brazilians call iceberg lettuce **alface americano** (ah-oooh-fah-see ah-meh-dee-kah-noh; American lettuce)! That's because iceberg lettuce is more popular in the United States than it is in Brazil.

On to the main course

The most famous Brazilian dish is called **feijoada** (fay-zhoh-ah-dah; bean/pig-parts stew). It has **orelha de porco** (oh-dehl-yah jee poh-koo; pig's ears) and even **joelho de porco** (zhoh-ehl-yoh jee poh-koo; pig's knees), in addition to the more **nobre** (noh-bdee; good quality. *Literally*: noble) parts of the pig.

Here's an index of classic Brazilian food items and dishes — besides **churrasco** (choo-hah-skoo; Brazilian barbeque), which I cover in the “Basking in Brazilian barbeque” section, and **feijoada**:

- ✓ **limão** (lee-mah-ooh; lime): Brazilians squeeze lime on just about anything, especially the classic meal combo of rice, beans, and skirt beef steak. It's also used in juices and desserts. Don't try to ask for a lemon in Brazil — they don't have any.
- ✓ **coco** (koh-koh; coconut): Brazilians love coconut. They drink coconut juice out of a whole green coconut, through a straw. Men chop off a top slice of the coconut with a machete and then sell it for 1 real (about 30¢) on the beach and on the street. **Coco** is also used in lots of main dishes from Bahia state.
- ✓ **pão de queijo** (pah-ooh jee kay-zhoh; cheese bread): Sold either as little balls or in pieces the size of a biscuit, it's unbelievably delicious.
- ✓ **moqueca** (moh-keh-kah; thick fish stew from Bahia state): This stew is made with **azeite de dendê** (ah-zay-chee jee dehn-deh; palm oil), which is hard on some stomachs, and **leite de coco** (lay-chee jee koh-koo; coconut milk).
- ✓ **acarajé** (ah-kah-dah-zeh; deep-fried black-eyed pea cakes, filled with tiny unpeeled shrimp, raw onions, tomato, green pepper, and peanut sauce): This popular dish from Bahia state is sold on beaches and on the street. It's also made with **azeite de dendê**.

- ✓ **coxinha** (koh-sheeng-yah; mashed potatoes, fried, shaped into a teardrop, with shredded chicken inside): You can find these at most corner **botecos** (boo-teh-kooz; cheap restaurants) or bakeries in Brazil.
- ✓ **açaí na tigela com granola** (ah-sah-ee nah tee-zheh-lah koh-oong gdah-noh-lah; Amazonian fruit sorbet in a large bowl, topped with granola and sometimes honey): This is the favored beach food of Brazilian surfers. **Açaí** is a small eggplant-colored berry.
- ✓ **farofa** (fah-doh-fah; toasted manioc flour mixed in with bits of fried pork and scrambled eggs): This is served with **feijoada** or on the side with your steak. Mmmm. A not-to-miss!
- ✓ **mandioca frita** (mahn-jee-ah-kah fdee-tah; fried yucca): This is my favorite Brazilian food item. It's way better than French fries!
- ✓ **X-salada** (sheez sah-lah-dah; cheeseburger with lettuce and tomato. *Literally*: cheese with salad): The letter x is pronounced *sheez* in Portuguese, which sounds like the English word *cheese*, so they just write the letter x. Brazilians always have a sense of humor.

Basking in Brazilian barbeque

You can't talk about Brazilian food without mentioning the beloved **churrascaria** (choo-hah-skeh-dee-ahz; Brazilian-style barbeque joint). It's a **comer à vontade** (koh-meh ah vohn-tah-jee; all-you-can-eat) affair.

Waiters come by your **mesa** (meh-zah; table) with about ten different **cortes** (koh-cheez; cuts) of meat every five minutes or so. Sometimes they give you a round card that's **verde** (veh-jee; green) on one side and **vermelho** (veh-mehl-yoh; red) on the other. When you want to **comer mais** (koh-meh mah-eez; eat more), place the card with the **verde** side up. And when you're **satisfeito** (sah-tees-fay-toh; full), be sure to have the **vermelho** side showing. Otherwise, it'll be hard to fend off the **garçons** (gah-soh-oongz; waiters)!

Here are the typical **cortes** the **garçons** may bring by your **mesa**:

- ✓ **picanha** (pee-kahn-yah; rumpsteak)
- ✓ **alcatra** (ow-kah-tdah; top sirloin)
- ✓ **fraldinha** (fdah-ooh-jeen-yah; flank steak)
- ✓ **lingüiça** (ling-gwee-sah; Brazilian chorizo-style sausage)
- ✓ **lombo** (loh-m-boh; pork loin)
- ✓ **coxa de frango** (koh-shah jee fdahn-goh; chicken thighs)
- ✓ **peito de frango** (pay-toh jee fdahn-goh; chicken breast)
- ✓ **coração de frango** (koh-dah-sah-ooh jee fdahn-goh; chicken hearts)
- ✓ **cordeiro** (koh-day-doh; lamb)

Farinha (fah-ding-yah; manioc flour) is simply **esquisito** (ehs-kee-zee-toh; bizarre) the first time you encounter it. Flour you dip your meat into? I personally didn't like **farinha** for about a year. But now when I eat a steak in the United States, I miss it. It's an acquired taste. And when you've acquired the taste, it's impossible to **viver sem** (vee-veh sang; live without).



Vegetarianos (veh-zeh-teh-dee-ah-nohz; vegetarians), never fear: **Churrascarias** always have a wonderful salad buffet.

Doing dessert

End the meal with some **sobremesa** (soh-bdee-meh-zah; dessert). Here are some of my favorites:

- ✓ **bolo de laranja** (boh-loo jee lah-dahn-zhah; orange-flavored pound cake)
- ✓ **bolo de limão** (boh-loo jee lee-mah-ooh; lime-flavored pound cake)
- ✓ **flan** (fluhn; flan custard)

- ✓ **mousse de maracujá** (mooz jee mah-dah-koo-jah; passion-fruit mousse)
- ✓ **mousse de chocolate** (mooz jee sho-koh-lah-chee; chocolate mousse)
- ✓ **sorvete** (soh-veh-chee; ice cream)
- ✓ **iogurte** (ee-oh-goo-chee; yogurt)
- ✓ **Romeu e Julieta** (hoh-mee-ooh ee zhoo-lee-eh-tah; guava paste with a piece of hard cheese. *Literally:* Romeo and Juliet)
- ✓ **pizza doce** (pee-tzah doh-see; sweet pizza)

In Brazil it's common for pizza joints to offer several dessert pizzas. **Chocolate e morango** (sho-koh-lah-chee ee; chocolate and strawberry) is an experience not to be missed.

You may want a **cafezinho** (kah-feh-zeen-yoh; shot of Brazilian coffee, served in a tiny cup or glass and sweetened with a lot of sugar) to go with your **sobremesa**. In good restaurants, you can ask for your coffee to be **sem açúcar** (sang ah-soo-kah; unsweetened). And if you're really in a decadent mood, you can ask for **chantily** (shan-chee-lee; whipped cream) with your coffee.

Paying the bill

Paying the bill isn't the most fun part of eating out, but this dialogue can help you practice what to say when the time comes.

Alberto: (To the waiter) **A conta, por favor.** (ah kohn-tah, poh fah-voh. The check, please.)

Waiter: **Vou trazê-la agora.** (voh tdah-zeh-lah ah-goh-dah. I'll bring it now.)

Alberto: **Aceita cartão?** (ah-say-tah kah-tah-ooh? Do you accept credit cards?)

Waiter: **Aceitamos.** (ah-say-tah-mohz; Yes, we do. *Literally:* We accept.)

Alberto: (After he sees the bill) **Que caro. Noventa e sete reais?** (kee *kah*-doh. noh-*vehn*-tah ee *seh*-chee hay-eyes? How expensive. Ninety-seven reais [about \$30]?)

Marina: **O serviço está incluído?** (ooh *seh-vee*-soh eh-*stah* eeng-kloo-ee-doo? Is the tip included?)

Alberto: **Ah — foi por isso. É taxa de quinze por cento.** (ah — *foh*-ee poh *ees*-soh. eh *tah*-shah jee *keen*-zee poh *sehn*-toh; Ah — that's why. It's 15 percent.)

Marina: (To the waiter, after the credit-card receipt comes back) **Tem caneta?** (*tang kah-neh*-tah? Do you have a pen?)



Brazilians generally don't leave a **gorjeta** (goh-*zheh*-tah; American-type tip) at restaurants. If service is exceptional, you can leave a **gorjeta** of 10 percent. Sometimes a 10 percent or 15 percent tip is required and included in the **conta** (kohn-tah; bill). You can tell because it says **serviço incluído** (*seh-vee*-soh een-kloo-ee-doh; tip included). *Sales tax* on a **conta** shows up as **I.V.A.** (*ee*-vah).

Words to Know

a conta	ah <u>kohn</u> -tah	the bill
vou	<u>voh</u>	I will
trazê-lo	tdah- <u>zeh</u> -loh	bring it
aceita	ah- <u>say</u> -tah	do you accept/ he or she accepts
cartão	kah- <u>tah</u> -ooh	credit card (Literally: card)
aceitamos	ah-say- <u>tah</u> -mohz	we accept

uma porção	<u>ooh</u> -mah poh- <u>sah</u> -ooh	an order (one portion of food)
cada	<u>kah</u> -dah	each
caro	<u>kah</u> -doh	expensive
o serviço	ooh seh- <u>vee</u> -soh	-obligatory tip (Literally: service)
incluído	eeng kloo- <u>ee</u> -doo	included
foi por isso	<u>foh</u> -ee poh <u>dee</u> - ssoh	that's why
caneta	kah- <u>neh</u> -tah	pen

Chapter 6

Shop 'Til You Drop

In This Chapter

- ▶ Buying and wearing clothes
- ▶ Checking out Brazilian handicrafts
- ▶ Shopping for food
- ▶ Expressing opinions: Good, better, best
- ▶ Paying and bargaining

In Brazil or anywhere, you can shop for **prazer** (pdah-zeh; pleasure) or out of **necessidade** (neh-seh-see-dah-jee; necessity). This chapter takes you out shopping on the town, with all the vocab you need to know.

Finding Places to Shop

You can **fazer compras** (fah-zeh kohm-pdahz; shop) in these main ways:

- ✓ **uma loja na rua** (ooh-mah loh-zhah nah hoo-ah; a store on the street)
- ✓ **uma feira** (ooh-mah fay-dah; an outdoor market)
- ✓ **supermercados** (soo-peh-meh-kah-dooz; supermarkets)
- ✓ **um shopping** (oong shoh-ping; a shopping mall)

Brazil's **shoppings** (shoh-pings; shopping malls) are very similar to the malls you've been to wherever you're from. They have

- ✓ **lojas de roupas** (*loh-zhahz jee hoh-pahz*; clothing stores)
- ✓ **livrarias** (*lee-vdah-dee-ahz*; bookstores)
- ✓ **farmácias** (*fah-mah-see-ahz*; drugstores)
- ✓ **lojas de CDs** (*loh-zhahz jee seh-dehz*; CD stores)
- ✓ **salas de cinema** (*sah-lahz jee see-neh-mah*; movie theaters)
- ✓ **praças de alimentação** (*pdah-sahz jee ah-lee-mehn-tah-sah-ooh*; food courts)



In Brazil, **shoppings** are more associated with the middle and upper classes. Those people with less **dinheiro** (*jeen-yay-doh*; money) prefer **lojas na rua** or **feiras** — where **coisas** (*koy-zahz*; things) are **mais barato** (*mah-eez bah-dah-toh*; cheaper).

Out for the Perfect Outfit

When you enter a Brazilian **loja** (*loh-zhah*; store) looking for **roupas** (*hoh-pahz*; clothes), expect to hear **Posso ajudar?** (*poh-soo ah-zhoo-dah*; Can I help you?). After **Posso ajudar?** the **atendente** (*ah-tehn-dehn-chee*; salesperson) may say

- ✓ **Está procurando algo em específico?** (*eh-stah pdoh-koo-dahn-doh ah-ooh-goh ang eh-speh-see-fee-koh*; Are you looking for something in particular?)
- ✓ **Já conhece a nossa loja?** (*zhah kohn-yeh-see ah noh-sah loh-zhah*; Are you already familiar with our store?)
- ✓ **Temos uma promoção.** (*teh-mohz ooh-mah pdoh-moh-sah-ooh*; We're having a sale.)

And here are some things you can say to the **atendente**:

- ✓ **Estou só olhando.** (*eh-stoh soh ohl-yahn-doh*; I'm just looking.)

- ✓ **Estou procurando . . .** (eh-stoh pdoh-koo-dahn-doh; I'm looking for . . .)
- ✓ **Tem . . . ?** (tang; Do you have . . . ?)

Skirts and shirts: Which to choose

Now for the goods. **De que precisa?** (jee keh pdeh-see-zah; What do you need?). You can tell the salesperson **Estou procurando** (eh-stoh pdoh-koo-dahn-doh; I'm looking for) one of the following items:

- ✓ **calças** (cow-sahz; pants)
- ✓ **calça jeans** (cow-sah jeenz; jeans)
- ✓ **blusa** (bloo-zah; woman's shirt)
- ✓ **camisa** (kah-mee-zah; man's shirt)
- ✓ **camiseta** (kah-mee-zeh-tah; T-shirt)
- ✓ **saia** (sah-ee-ah; skirt)
- ✓ **vestido** (ves-chee-doo; dress)
- ✓ **cinto** (seen-too; belt)
- ✓ **meias** (may-ahz; socks)
- ✓ **sapatos** (sah-pah-tohz; shoes)
- ✓ **relógio** (heh-law-zhee-oh; watch)
- ✓ **chapéu** (shah-peh-oo; hat)

You may want to specify a **tamanho** (tah-mahn-yoh; size). In Brazil, **os tamanhos** are either European (when they're in numbers — both clothing and shoes) or generic, from small to extra large:

- ✓ **pequeno (P)** (peh-keh-noh; small)
- ✓ **médio (M)** (meh-jee-oh; medium)
- ✓ **grande (G)** (gdahn-jee; large)
- ✓ **extra grande (GG)** (ehz-tdah gdahn-jee; extra large)
- ✓ **tamanho único** (tah-mahn-yoh oo-nee-koh; one size fits all)



Brazilian sizes are smaller than in North America and in some European countries. The same size shirt will be a medium, say, in the United States but a large in Brazil. I'm a semi-tall gal who tries to exercise regularly, and sadly, I most often had to buy the **grande** or **extra grande** sizes. So don't feel like you suddenly have to go on a **regime** (heh-zhee-mee; diet) after you hit the Brazilian stores!

You can also request a certain **cor** (koh; color):

- ✓ **branco** (bdahn-koh; white)
- ✓ **preto** (pdeh-toh; black)
- ✓ **vermelho** (veh-meh-ooh-yoh; red)
- ✓ **verde** (veh-jee; green)
- ✓ **amarelo** (ah-mah-deh-loo; yellow)
- ✓ **azul** (ah-zoo; blue)
- ✓ **marrom** (mah-hoh-oong; brown)
- ✓ **rosa** (hoh-zah; pink)
- ✓ **roxo** (hoh-shoo; purple)
- ✓ **laranja** (lah-dahn-zhah; orange)

If you want a different shade, just add **claro** (klah-doh; light) or **escuro** (eh-skoo-doh; dark) after the name of the color:

- ✓ **azul claro** (ah-zoo klah-doh; light blue)
- ✓ **vermelho escuro** (veh-meh-ooh-yoh eh-skoo-doh; dark red)

So what happens if your **cinto** or **camiseta** is too small? Or too big? You could say:

- ✓ **É pequeno demais.** (eh peh-keh-noh jee-my-eez; It's too small.)
- ✓ **É grande demais.** (eh gdahn-jee jee-my-eez; It's too big.)

Putting the word **demais** after a word is like adding the word *too* or *really* in front of an English word. Check it out:

- ✓ **É caro demais.** (eh kah-doh jee-my-eez; It's too expensive.)
- ✓ **É bonito demais.** (eh boo-nee-too jee-my-eez; It's really beautiful.)

É bom demais! (eh boh-oong jee-my-eez; It's fantastic!) is a common phrase that literally means "It's too good!"

Trying it on

The verb for trying on clothes is **experimentar** (eh-speh-dee-mehn-tah). It's easy to remember — what does the word look like? **Tá certo** (tah seh-toh; That's right) — *experiment*. In Portuguese, you "experiment" with new **cores** (koh-deez; colors) and new looks by **experimentando** (eh-speh-dee-mehn-tahn-doh; trying on) **artigos de roupa** (ah-chee-gohz jee hoh-pah; articles of clothing). Here are some common phrases using **experimentar**:

- ✓ **Quer experimentar . . . ?** (keh eh-speh-dee-mehn-tah; Would you like to try/try on . . . ?)
- ✓ **Gostaria de experimentá-lo?** (goh-stah-dee-ah jee eh-speh-dee-mehn-tah-loh; Would you like to try it on?)
- ✓ **Posso experimentar . . . ?** (poh-soo eh-speh-dee-mehn-tah; Can I try/try on . . . ?)
- ✓ **Posso experimentar essa blusa?** (pah-soo eh-speh-dee-mehn-tah eh-sah bloo-zah; Can I try on this [women's] shirt?)
- ✓ **Tem que experimentar . . .** (tang kee eh-speh-dee-mehn-tah; You've got to try/try on . . .)
- ✓ **É só experimentar.** (eh soh eh-speh-dee-mehn-tah; It won't hurt just to try it/try it on. *Literally:* It's just trying.)

After you leave the **provador** (pdoh-vah-doh; dressing room), the salesperson may ask you **Quer levar?** (keh leh-vah; Would you like to get it?). Here are some answers:

- ✓ **Vou levar.** (voh leh-vah; I'll take it.)
- ✓ **Não, não vou levar, mas obrigado/a.** (nah-oooh, nah-oooh voh leh-vah, mah-eez oh-bdee-gah-doh/ah; No, I'm not going to get it, but thanks.)

Here's a conversation you might have with a salesperson:

Dudu: **Gosto muito desses.** (goh-stoo moh-ee-too deh-seez; I really like these.)

Salesperson: **São bonitos. Quer experimentar?** (sah-oooh boo-nee-toooh. keh eh-speh-dee-mehn-tah; They're nice. Do you want to try them on?)

Dudu: **Posso?** (poh-soo; Can I?)

Salesperson: **Claro.** (klah-doo; Of course.)

Dudu: **Obrigado. São muito legais.** (oh-bdee-gah-doh. sah-oooh moh-ee-toh lay-gah-eez. Thanks. They're really cool.)

Salesperson: **Estou vendendo muito desse modelo.** (eh-stoh vahn-dehn-doh moh-ee-too deh-see moh-deh-loo; I'm selling a lot of that type.)

Dudu: **Quanto custam?** (kwahn-toh koo-stah-oooh; How much do they cost?)

Salesperson: **São oito reais. Quer levar?** (sah-oooh oh-ee-toh heh-eyes. keh leh-vah; Eight reais. You wanna take them?)

Dudu: **Vou, sim. Tem troco para dez reais?** (voh sing. tang tdoh-koo pah-dah dehz heh-eyes; Yeah. Do you have change for ten reais?)

Words to Know

<i>gosto</i>	<i>goh-stoo</i>	I like
<i>desses</i>	<i>deh-seez</i>	of these
<i>estou</i>	<i>eh-stoh</i>	I am
<i>vendendo</i>	<i>vehn-dehn-doh</i>	selling
<i>troco</i>	<i>tdoh-koo</i>	change (for money)



The verb **gostar** (*goh-stah*; to like) is always followed by **de** (jee), which means “of.” But in English, saying something like “I like of these” just sounds weird, so when you translate **Gostar desses** (I like these) to English, just leave out the *of*.

Exploring Brazilian Treasures

Brazilian **mercados** (*meh-kah-dooz*; markets) have plenty of **artesanato** (*ah-teh-zah-nah-toh*; handicrafts) that you may want as **lembranças** (*leh-m-bdahn-sahz*; souvenirs), such as **redes** (*heh-jeez*; hammocks) and **berimbaus** (*beh-deem-bah-ooz*; musical instruments from the state of Bahia).



Also in Bahia are the famous colorful **fitas de Bonfim** (*fee-tahz jee boh-oong-feeng*; ribbons of Bonfim). These ribbons, which have religious sayings on them, come from a church called Bonfim in the city of Salvador. When you buy a **fita**, the seller ties it around your wrist and tells you to make a wish. The vendor

then warns you **nunca** (*noon-kah*; never) to take it off; otherwise, you'll be cursed with **má sorte** (*mah soh-chee*; bad luck). On the upside, if you let it disintegrate naturally, they say the wish you made will come true!

Check out some other classic Brazilian souvenirs:

- ✓ **uma pintura** (*ooh-mah peen-too-dah*; a painting)
- ✓ **um biquíni** (*oohng bee-kee-nee*; a bikini)
- ✓ **bijuteria** (*bee-zhoo-teh-dee-ah*; jewelry)
- ✓ **anéis** (*ah-nay-eez*; rings)
- ✓ **brincos** (*bdeeng-kohz*; earrings)
- ✓ **colares** (*koh-lah-deez*; necklaces)
- ✓ **uma canga com a bandeira brasileira** (*ooh-mah kahn-gah kohng ah bahn-day-dah bdah-zee-lay-dah*; a beach sarong used as a towel or skirt, printed with the Brazilian flag)
- ✓ **música brasileira** (*moo-zee-kah bdah-zee-lay-dah*; Brazilian music)
- ✓ **produtos dos índios** (*pdoh-doo-tohz dohz een-jee-ohz*; products made by native Brazilian tribes)
- ✓ **pó de guaraná** (*poh jee gwah-dah-nah*; guarana berry powder used to make a traditional natural energy drink)
- ✓ **uma camiseta de um time de futebol** (*ooh-mah kah-mee-zeh-tah jee oong chee-mee jee foo-chee-bah-ooh*; a T-shirt with a Brazilian soccer team logo)

In Brazil, you may find tons of knickknacks made from

- ✓ **barro** (*bah-hoh*; clay)
- ✓ **madeira** (*mah-day-dah*; wood)
- ✓ **pedra** (*peh-drah*; stone)
- ✓ **palha** (*pahl-yah*; straw)
- ✓ **cerâmica** (*seh-dah-mee-kah*; ceramics)

- ✓ **vidro** (*vee-droh*; glass)
- ✓ **semente** (*seh-mehn-chee*; seeds)
- ✓ **renda** (*hehn-dah*; crocheted yarn)

If you want to know whether the item is *handmade*, ask whether it's **feito à mão** (*fay-toh ah mah-oooh*). If it's food, the term for *homemade* is **caseiro** (*kah-zay-doh*) — which comes from the word **casa** (*kah-zah*; house).

Shopping for Food and Necessities at the Market

Brazilians shop at **supermercados** (*soo-peh-meh-kah-dooz*; supermarkets), but they also love to buy **frutas** (*fdoo-tahz*; fruits) and **legumes e verduras** (*leh-goo-meez ee veh-doo-dahz*; vegetables) at **feirinhas** (*fay-deen-yahz*; outdoor markets), where the food is usually **mais barato** (*may-eez bah-dah-toh*; cheaper) and **melhor** (*mehl-yoh*; better).

Getting some practical items

Here are some items you can buy at a **supermercado** (*soo-peh-meh-kah-doo*; supermarket), besides **comida** (*koh-mee-dah*; food):

- ✓ **papel higiênico** (*pah-peh-oooh ee-zheh-nee-koh*; toilet paper)
- ✓ **produtos de limpeza** (*pdoh-doo-tohz jee leem-peh-zah*; cleaning products)
- ✓ **latas de legumes** (*lah-tahz jee leh-goo-meez*; cans of vegetables)
- ✓ **coisas congeladas** (*koy-zahz kohn-zhe-lah-dahz*; frozen things)
- ✓ **adoçante** (*ah-doh-sahn-chee*; sugar substitute in liquid form — it's very popular in Brazil)
- ✓ **revistas** (*heh-vee-stahz*; magazines)

- ✓ **massas** (*mah-sahz*; pasta)
- ✓ **temperos** (*tehm-peh-dooz*; herbs and spices)
- ✓ **creme dental** (*kdeh-mee dehn-tah-ooh*; toothpaste)
- ✓ **escova dental** (*eh-skoh-vah dehn-tah-ooh*; toothbrush)
- ✓ **sabonete** (*sah-boh-neh-chee*; soap)
- ✓ **xampu** (*shahm-poo*; shampoo)
- ✓ **fralda** (*fdah-ooh-dah*; diapers)
- ✓ **aparelho de barbear** (*ah-pah-dehl-yoh jee bah-bee-ah*; shaving razor)

Check out www.paodeacucar.com.br to learn the names of more supermarket items in Portuguese.

Shopping at the outdoor market

Now check out the **feirinha** (*fay-deen-yah*; outdoor market). Here are some typical **verduras** (*veh-dooh-dahz*; leafy veggies) and **legumes** (*leh-goo-meez*; veggies that grow underground) you can find:

- ✓ **batatas** (*bah-tah-tahz*; potatoes)
- ✓ **couve** (*koh-ooh-vee*; bitter greens — necessary to make **feijoada** [*fay-zhoh-ah-dah*; bean/pig-parts stew]; the **couve** is fried with garlic and eaten on the side)
- ✓ **coentro** (*koh-ehn-tdoh*; cilantro)
- ✓ **salsinha** (*sah-ooh-seen-yah*; parsley)
- ✓ **feijão** (*fay-zhow*; beans)
- ✓ **pepino** (*peh-pee-noh*; cucumber)
- ✓ **brócolis** (*bdoh-koh-leez*; broccoli)
- ✓ **espinafre** (*ehs-pee-nah-fdee*; spinach)
- ✓ **repolho** (*heh-pol-yoh*; cabbage)
- ✓ **berinjela** (*beh-dang-zheh-lah*; eggplant)
- ✓ **abóbora** (*ah-boh-boh-dah*; pumpkin)

Here are some types of fish and meat:

- ✓ **peixe** (*pay-shee*; fish)
- ✓ **frutos do mar** (*fdoo-tohz doo mah*; shellfish.
Literally: fruits of the sea)
- ✓ **atum** (*ah-toong*; tuna)
- ✓ **salmão** (*sah-ooh-mah-ooh*; salmon)
- ✓ **camarões** (*kah-mah-doh-eez*; shrimp)
- ✓ **caranguejo** (*kahn-gdeh-zhoh*; crab)
- ✓ **lula** (*loo-lah*; squid)
- ✓ **polvo** (*pohl-voh*; octopus)
- ✓ **cortes de carne** (*koh-cheez jee kah-nee*; cuts of meat)
- ✓ **carne moída** (*kah-nee moh-ee-dah*; ground beef)
- ✓ **aves** (*ah-veez*; poultry)
- ✓ **frango sem osso** (*fdahn-goh sang oh-soo*; boneless chicken)
- ✓ **frango com osso** (*fdahn-goh koh-oong oh-soo*; boned chicken)

Sometimes the butcher asks whether you want your meat **de primeira ou de segunda** (*jee pdee-may-dah ooh jee seh-goon-dah*; Grade A or Grade B).

Making Comparisons and Expressing Opinions

If you're shopping with an **amigo** (*ah-mee-goh*; friend), you may want to share your **opinião** (*oh-pee-nee-ah-ooh*; opinion) about the things in the **loja** (*loh-zhah*; shop).

If you think something is so-so, you can say:

- ✓ **Gosto.** (*gohs-too*; I like it.)
- ✓ **Está bem.** (*eh-stah bang*; It's okay.)

- ✓ **Nao está mau.** (*nah-oooh eh-stah mah-oooh*; It's not bad.)

Then if you see something that you like even more, you can say:

- ✓ **Este é melhor.** (*ehs-chee eh meh-oooh-yoh*; This one's better.)
- ✓ **Este eu gosto mais.** (*ehs-chee ee-oooh goh-stoo mah-eez*; I like this one more.)
- ✓ **É bem bonito este.** (*eh bang boo-nee-too ehs-chee*; This one's really nice.)

When you see the best one, you can say:

- ✓ **Este é o melhor.** (*ehs-chee eh ooh meh-oooh-yoh*; This one's the best.)
- ✓ **É perfeito este.** (*eh peh-fay-toh esh-chee*; This one's perfect.)



Better is **melhor** (*meh-oooh-yoh*), and the best is **o melhor** (*ooh meh-oooh-yoh*).

Now comes the fun part. In Portuguese, adding the ending **-ísimo/a** or **-érrimo/a** to the end of some adjectives exaggerates whatever's being said. Something that's nice but not really **caro** (*kah-doh*; expensive) is suddenly **chiquérrimo** (*shee-keh-hee-moh*; really glamorous). Here are some common expressions you can use while shopping:

- ✓ **Chiquérrimo!** (*shee-keh-hee-moh*! Really glamorous/expensive-looking! — from the word **chique**)
- ✓ **Caríssimo!** (*kah-dee-see-moh*; So expensive! — from the word **caro**)

Paying for Your Purchases

Here are three of the more common ways of asking how much something is:

- ✓ **Quanto vale?** (*kwahn-toh vah-lee*; How much does it cost? *Literally*: How much is it worth?)
- ✓ **Quanto custa?** (*kwahn-toh koo-stah*; How much does it cost?)
- ✓ **Quanto é?** (*kwahn-toh eh*; How much is it?)

Here's how the vendor usually answers:

- ✓ **Vale . . . reais.** (*vah-lee . . . heh-eyez*; It costs . . . [number] reais.)
- ✓ **Custa . . . reais.** (*koos-tah . . . heh-eyez*; It costs . . . [number] reais.)
- ✓ **São . . . reais.** (*sah-ooh . . . heh-eyez*; It costs . . . [number] reais.)

Luckily, when you **pagar** (*pah-gah*; pay), visible **números** (*noo-meh-dohz*) are often involved. At a nice shop or supermarket, you'll be seeing the number pop up on a cash register. That makes communication a little easier. If you're having problems communicating at an informal, outdoor market (where you often won't find even a calculator), you can always pull out a pen and paper to clear things up.

Here are some other helpful uses of **pagar**:

- ✓ **Quer pagar agora ou depois?** (*keh pah-gah ah-goh-dah ooh deh-poh-eez*; Do you want to pay now or later?)
- ✓ **Já pagou?** (*zhah pah-goh*; Did you pay already?)
- ✓ **Paguei vinte reais.** (*pah-gay veen-chee heh-eyez*; I paid 20 reais.)
- ✓ **Vão pagar a conta.** (*vah-ooh pah-gah ah kohn-tah*; They will pay the bill.)

These phrases may come in handy when you're at the **caixa** (*kah-ee-shah*; register):

- ✓ **Tem desconto para estudantes?** (*tang dehs-kohn-toh pah-dah eh-stoo-dahn-cheez*; Do you have a student discount?)

- ✓ **Tem caneta?** (*tang kah-neh-tah*; Do you have a pen?)
- ✓ **Me dá um recibo, por favor?** (*mee dah oong heh-see-boh poh fah-voh*; Can you give me a receipt, please?)

The vendor may ask you:

- ✓ **Tem algum documento? Um passaporte?** (*tang ah-ooh-goong doh-koo-mehn-toh oong pah-sah-poh-chee*; Do you have some I.D.? A passport?)
- ✓ **Qual é a validade do cartão?** (*kwah-ooh eh ah vah-lee-dah-jee doo kah-tah-ooh*; What's the expiration on the card?)

As a rule of thumb, you can bargain in Brazil in outdoor **mercados** (*meh-kah-dooz*; markets) but not inside **lojas** (*loh-zhahz*; stores). At **feirinhas** (*fay-deen-yahz*; outdoor food markets), most locals don't bargain, though you can always try — it won't be considered offensive.

Start out by asking how much something costs, and then offer a lower price or tell the vendor you have only a certain amount of money:

- ✓ **Quanto custa?** (*kwahn-toh koo-stah*; How much does it cost?)
- ✓ **Quanto é?** (*kwahn-toh eh*; How much is it?)
- ✓ **Posso pagar . . . reais?** (*pah-sooh pah-gah . . . heh-eyez*; Can I pay . . . [number] reais?)
- ✓ **Só tenho vinte reais.** (*soh tang-yoh veen-chee heh-eyez*; I have only twenty reais.)

You can then accept the price the vendor gives you or make a final offer.



Of course, if you tell the vendor you only have 15 reais, you probably don't want to pay with a 20-real bill. Separate the bills you want to use to pay for the item before approaching the stall.

Chapter 7

Making Leisure a Top Priority

In This Chapter

- ▶ Asking about an event and giving and receiving invitations
- ▶ Going out on the town
- ▶ Taking in some music
- ▶ Exploring museums, movies, and special events
- ▶ Going to the beach
- ▶ Talking about soccer and other forms of recreation
- ▶ Talking about love

Brazil is probably most famous for its **praias** (*pdah-ee-ahz*; beaches) and **Carnaval** (*kah-nah-vah-oo*). But that's not all that Brazilian culture is. The country has fabulous **museus** (*moo-zay-ooz*; museums), a vibrant arts scene, and **música ao vivo** (*moo-zee-kah ah-oooh vee-voo*; live music).

This chapter tells you what you need to know to explore and appreciate the art and culture of Brazil and to enjoy yourself as much as any Brazilian.

Talking about Going Out

Tem vontade de sair? (tang vohn-tah-jee jee sah-eeh; Are you in the mood to go out?).

Whether you're itching for **música ao vivo** (moo-zee-kah ah-ooh vee-voo; live music) or something else, you can use the following phrase to ask locals what you can do around town: **O que recomenda para fazer hoje à noite?** (ooh keh heh-koh-mehn-dah pah-dah fah-zeh oh-zhee ah noh-ee-chee; What do you recommend doing tonight?).

The locals will probably then ask you **De/do que você gosta?** (jee/dooh keh voh-seh goh-stah; What do you like?). You can respond **Gosto de . . .** (goh-stoh jee; I like . . .).

- ✓ **bares** (bah-deez; bars)
- ✓ **boates** (boh-ah-cheez; nightclubs)
- ✓ **espetáculos** (eh-speh-tah-koo-lohz; shows)
- ✓ **eventos culturais** (eh-vehn-tohz kool-too-dah-eez; cultural events)
- ✓ **cinema** (see-neh-mah; cinema)
- ✓ **teatro** (chee-ah-tdoh; theater)
- ✓ **festas** (fehs-tahz; parties)



If you're new in town and just want to ask how to get to the **centro** (sehn-tdoh; downtown), say **Onde fica o centro?** (ohn-jee fee-kah ooh sehn-tdoh; Where's the downtown area?).

Inviting someone and being invited

If you want to invite someone out on the town with you, you can say one of the following:

- ✓ **Quer ir comigo?** (keh ee koh-mee-goh; Do you want to go with me?)

- ✓ **Quer vir conosco?** (*keh vee koh-noh-skoh*; Do you want to come with us?)
- ✓ **Quero te convidar.** (*keh-doo chee kohn-vee-dah*; I want to invite you.)
- ✓ **Estou te convidando!** (*eh-stoh chee kohn-vee-dahn-doh*; I'm inviting you!)
- ✓ **Vem conosco!** (*vang koh-noh-skoh*; Come with us!)
- ✓ **Vem comigo!** (*vang koh-mee-goh*; Come with me!)

Here are some more-specific examples of common expressions using **convidar** (*kohn-vee-dah*; to invite):

- ✓ **Quero convidar a todos para a minha casa.** (*keh-doo kohn-vee-dah ah toh-dooz pah-dah ah meen-yah kah-zah*; I want to invite everyone to my house.)
- ✓ **Estão convidando a gente para ir à praia.** (*eh-stah-oooh kohn-vee-dahn-doh ah zhang-chee pah-dah eeh ah pdah-ee-ah*; They're inviting us to go to the beach.)



Brazilians often say **a gente** (*ah zhang-chee*) rather than **nós** (*nohz*) to mean “we” or “us.” **A gente** literally means “the people.” Strange but true, and fun to say.

Asking what the place or event is like

To get more details about an **evento** (*eh-vehn-toh*; event) or **lugar** (*loo-gah*; place), you may want to ask for **mais detalhes** (*mah-eez deh-tahl-yeetz*; more details). Here are the what, when, how, where, and why questions:

- ✓ **Como é o lugar?** (*koh-moh eh ooh loo-gah*; What's the place like?)
- ✓ **Quando começa?** (*kwahn-doh koh-meh-sah*; When does it start?)
- ✓ **Onde fica?** (*ohn-jee fee-kah*; Where is it?)

- ✓ **Tem algum motivo?** (*tang ah-ooh-goong moh-chee-voh*; Why is it being put on?)
- ✓ **O que é, exatamente?** (*ooh kee eh, eh-zah-tah-mehn-chee*; What is it, exactly?)

And check out some additional phrases that can give you even more clues about what to do:

- ✓ **Custa caro?** (*koo-stah kah-doh*; Is it expensive?)
- ✓ **Vai ter muitas pessoas?** (*vah-ee teh moh-ee-tahz peh-soh-ahz*; Will there be a lot of people?)
- ✓ **Que tipo de música vai ter?** (*kee chee-poh jee moo-zee-kah vah-ee teh*; What type of music will there be?)
- ✓ **Que tipo de gente?** (*kee chee-poh jee zhang-chee*; What type of people?)
- ✓ **É informal ou formal?** (*eh een-foh-mah-ooh ooh foh-mah-ooh*; Is it informal or formal?)
- ✓ **Vale a pena ir?** (*vah-lee ah peh-nah ee*; Is it worth going to?)

Here are some answers you're likely to get about an event:

- ✓ **Não custa caro.** (*nah-ooh koo-stah kah-doh*; It's not expensive.)
- ✓ **Vai ser muito bom.** (*vah-ee seh moh-ee-toh boh-oong*; It's going to be really good.)
- ✓ **Vale a pena.** (*vah-lee ah peh-nah*; It's worth going to.)
- ✓ **Deve ter bastante gente.** (*deh-vee teh bah-stahn-chee zhang-chee*; There should be a lot of people.)
- ✓ **O lugar é pequeno.** (*ooh loo-gah eh peh-keh-noh*; The place is small.)
- ✓ **É muito jovem.** (*eh moh-ee-toh zhoh-vang*; It's really young.)

- ✓ **É para todas as idades.** (*eh pah-dah toh-dahz ahz ee-dah-jeez*; It's for all ages.)
- ✓ **É um bar gay.** (*eh oong bah gay*; It's a gay bar.)

You will also hear a “gay” place described as GLS (zeh eh-lee eh-see), or gay, **lésbicas e simpatizantes** (gay, leh-z-bee-kahs ee seem-pah-chee-zahn-cheez; gay, lesbian, and those sympathetic). Brazilians say both “gay” and “GLS.”



Two other important questions to ask in Brazil about bars or events is whether there's an **entrada** (*ehn-tdah-dah*; cover charge) and whether the place has a **consumação mínima** (*kohn-soo-mah-sah-oooh mee-nee-mah*; dollar-amount minimum), meaning you'd perhaps have to consume at least \$10, say, in drinks or food. Ask **Tem entrada?** (*tang ehn-tdah-dah*; Does it have a cover charge?) or **Tem consumação mínima?** (*tang kohn-soo-mah-sah-oooh mee-nee-mah*; Is there a minimum?).

Asking People What They Like to Do

As you make friends, you want to know what hobbies or interests you have in common. Just say **Você gosta de . . . ?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee*; Do you like . . . ?) and then add in the activity, like this:

- ✓ **Você gosta de surfar?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee soo-fah*; Do you like to surf?)
- ✓ **Você gosta de ir à academia?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee ee ah ah-kah-deh-mee-ah*; Do you like to go to the gym?)
- ✓ **Você gosta de correr?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee koh-heh*; Do you like to go running?)
- ✓ **Você gosta de jogar futebol?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee zhoh-gah foo-chee-bah-oooh*; Do you like to play soccer?)

If someone asks you one of these questions, you can answer **Sim, gosto** (*sing goh-stoo*; Yeah, I like it) or **Não, não gosto** (*nah-ooh, nah-ooh goh-stoo*; No, I don't like it).

You can use the **você gosta de . . .** formula for a ton of fun activities, like these:

- ✓ **Você gosta de viajar?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee vee-ah-zhah*; Do you like to travel?)
- ✓ **Você gosta de ir ao cinema?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee ee ah-ooh see-neh-mah*; Do you like to go to the movies?)
- ✓ **Você gosta de praticar o seu inglês?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee pdah-chee-kah ooh seh-ooh eeng-glehz*; Do you like practicing your English?)
- ✓ **Você gosta de cozinhar?** (*voh-seh goh-stah jee koh-zeeng-yah*; Do you like to cook?)



Expressing your most passionate feelings in another language is always difficult. But here are a couple of easy tricks: To say you love doing something, use **Eu adoro . . .** (*eh-ooh ah-doh-doo*; I love . . .). If you hate it, say **Eu detesto . . .** (*eh-ooh deh-tehs-toh*; I hate . . .).

Taking in Brazil's Musical Culture

The one thing you shouldn't miss doing in Brazil **de noite** (*jee noh-ee-chee*; at night) is listening to **música ao vivo** (*moo-zee-kah ah-ooh vee-voh*; live music). Or pick up an instrument and play yourself!

Playing an instrument

Você toca algum instrumento? (*voh-seh toh-kah ah-ooh-goong een-stdoo-mehn-toh*; Do you play an instrument?). In Brazil, the **violão** (*vee-ooh-lah-ooh*; guitar) is by far the most common instrument played. But Brazilians appreciate all kinds of music, and anything

having to do with music is a great conversation starter.

Take a glance at some names of instruments in Portuguese:

- ✓ **o violão** (ooh vee-ooh-lah-ooh; acoustic guitar)
- ✓ **a guitarra** (ah gee-tah-hah; electric guitar)
- ✓ **a bateria** (ah bah-teh-dee-ah; drums)
- ✓ **o baixo** (ooh bah-ee-shoh; bass guitar)
- ✓ **a flauta** (ah flah-ooh-tah; flute)
- ✓ **o piano** (ooh pee-ah-noh; piano)
- ✓ **o violino** (ooh vee-oh-lee-noh; violin)

Now for the Brazilian instruments. Perhaps hundreds of instruments are specific to Brazil and Brazilian music. Music is Brazilians' artistic specialty, after all. Here are some of the most famous ones:

- ✓ **a cuíca** (ah kwee-kah; a stick that's rubbed through what looks like a small drum — it makes a donkey hee-haw or whine, depending on how it's moved)
- ✓ **o berimbau** (ooh beh-deem-bah-ooh; a large bow that's played with a wooden stick — it's used to accompany the Brazilian martial arts form **capoeira** [kay-poh-ay-dah])
- ✓ **o paxixi** (ooh pah-shee-shee; a woven rattle)
- ✓ **o cavaquinho** (ooh kah-vah-keen-yoh; an instrument similar to a ukulele — it's used in bands that play **forró** music, which originates in the northeast and sounds similar to country)
- ✓ **o pandeiro** (ooh pahn-day-doh; a tambourine)
- ✓ **a sanfona** (ah sahn-foh-nah; an accordion — used for **forró** music)

And here are some phrases about playing these instruments:

- ✓ **Eu toco piano.** (*eh-ooh toh-koo pee-ah-noh*; I play the piano.)
- ✓ **Ela toco bateria.** (*eh-lah toh-kah bah-teh-dee-ah*; She plays the drums.)
- ✓ **Eles tocam violão.** (*eh-leez toh-kah-ooh vee-oh-lah-ooh*; They play the guitar.)



Brazilians use the guitar as the model of the ideal woman's body. English-speakers say "hourglass figure"; Brazilians say **corpo de violão** (*koh-poo jee vee-ooh-lah-ooh*; guitar-shaped body).

Dancing around and singing out loud

Especially if you're **solteiro** (*sohl-tay-doh*; a single person), you'll probably want to learn how to ask someone to **dançar** (*dahn-sah*; dance) and how you'll be asked to **dançar**.

Couple-dancing is very common in Brazil. The most popular form is probably **forró** (*foh-hah*), a fast-paced country-sounding music and accompanying dance form that originates in the northeast. **Samba** (*sahm-bah*), the best-known music and dance from Brazil, is generally not for **casais** (*kah-zah-eez*; couples), at least during festivals. You dance **sozinho** (*soh-zeen-yoh*; alone).

Here are some common expressions that use **dançar**:

- ✓ **Vamos dançar?** (*vah-mohz dahn-sah*; Shall we dance?)
- ✓ **Quer dançar comigo?** (*keh dahn-sah koh-mee-goh*; Do you want to dance with me?)
- ✓ **Não sei dançar.** (*nah-ooh say dahn-sah*; I don't know how to dance.)

Você gosta de cantar? (*voh-seh goh-stah jee kahn-tah*; Do you like to sing?). Here are some ways you can use **cantar**:

- ✓ **Ela canta super bem.** (eh-lah *kahn*-tah soo-peh bang; She sings really well.)
- ✓ **Eu não canto muito bem.** (eh-oooh *nah*-oooh *kahn*-toh moh-ee-toh bang; I don't sing very well.)
- ✓ **Você canta? Não sabia.** (voh-seh *kahn*-tah nah-oooh sah-bee-ah; You sing? I didn't know.)
- ✓ **Nós cantamos no chuveiro.** (nohz *kahn*-tah-mohz noh shoo-vay-doh; We sing in the shower.)

Exploring Carnaval in Brazil

Brazil is world-famous for its **Carnaval** (kah-nah-vah-oooh; Carnival). The festivities take place usually in **fevereiro** (feh-veh-day-doh; February) or **março** (mah-soo; March), when the weather is hot in Brazil, for the four days preceding **Quarta-feira de Cinzas** (kwah-tah-fay-dah jee *seen*-zahz; Ash Wednesday).

Every Brazilian has a different opinion on which Carnaval is best. Here are some questions you can ask a Brazilian to help you decide which Carnaval is right for you:

- ✓ **Qual Carnaval no Brasil você acha melhor?** (kwah-oooh kah-nah-vah-oooh noh bdah-zee-oooh ah-shah mel-yoh; Which Carnaval in Brazil do you think is best?)
- ✓ **Qual é o mais divertido?** (kwah-oooh eh ooh mah-eez jee-veh-chee-doo; Which one is the most fun?)
- ✓ **Qual tem o melhor show?** (kwah-oooh tang ah mel-yoh shoh; Which one has the best show?)
- ✓ **Qual tem o melhor carnaval de rua?** (kwah-oooh tang oh mel-yoh kah-nah-vah-oooh jee hoo-ah; Which one has the best street carnival?)
- ✓ **Já esteve no Carnaval de . . . ?** (zhah eh-steh-vee noo kah-nah-vah-oooh jee; Have you been to the Carnaval in . . . ?)

Exploring Art Galleries and Museums

Brazil has plenty of **galerias de arte** (gah-leh-dee-ahz jee *ah-chee*; art galleries), **centros culturais** (sehn-tdohz kool-too-dah-eez; cultural centers), and **museus** (moo-zeh-oozh; museums). The biggest and most famous ones are in some of the country's largest cities: São Paulo, Brasília, and Rio.

Here are some things you'll find in a gallery or museum:

- ✓ **exibições temporárias** (eggs-ee-bee-soy-eez temp-oh-dah-dee-ahz; temporary exhibitions)
- ✓ **quadros** (kwah-drohzh; paintings)
- ✓ **esculturas** (eh-skool-too-dahz; sculptures)
- ✓ **fotografias** (foh-toh-gdah-fee-ahz; photographs)
- ✓ **objetos históricos** (ohb-zheh-tohz ee-stoh-dee-kohz; historic objects)

Check out some phrases that deal with **a arte** (ah *ah-chee*; art):

- ✓ **Você gosta de arte?** (voh-seh goh-stah jee *ah-chee*; Do you like art?)
- ✓ **Tem uma exibição muito boa no Itaú Cultural.** (*tang ooh-mah eggs-ee-bee-sah-oooh moh-ee-toh boh-ah noh ee-tah-oooh kool-too-dah-oooh*; There's a really good exhibition at Itaú Cultural Center.)
- ✓ **Tem uns quadros famosos do Picasso naquele museu.** (*tang oonz kwah-drohzh fah-moh-zooz doo pee-kah-soh nah-keh-lee moo-zeh-oooh*; There are some famous Picasso paintings in that museum.)
- ✓ **Eu adoro as vernissages.** (*ee-oooh ah-doh-doo ahz veh-nee-sah-zhehz*; I love art exhibition opening nights.)

Going to the Movies

What type of **filmes** (*fee-ooh-meez*; movies) do you like? Have you ever seen **um filme brasileiro** (*oong fee-ooh-mee bdah-zee-lay-doh*; a Brazilian movie)? You may be surprised to find out that the Brazilian **indústria de filmes** (*een-doo-stee-ah jee fee-ooh-meez*; film industry) is very large and of high quality.

At most **salas de cinema** (*sah-lahz jee see-neh-mah*; movie theaters) in Brazil, about half of the **filmes** playing are Brazilian — several **filmes novos** (*fee-ooh-meez noh-vooz*; new films) come out every month. You may want to ask whether the movie is **legendado** (*leh-zhang-dah-doo*; subtitled) or **dublado** (*doo-blah-doo*; dubbed over). Subtitled films are also sometimes referred to as **versão original** (*veh-sah-ooh oh-dee-zhee-nah-ooh*; original version).

Here are some handy phrases you can use to talk about **filmes**:

- ✓ **Vamos ao cinema?** (*vah-mohz ah-ooh see-neh-mah*; Do you want to go to the movies?)
- ✓ **Quer assistir um filme?** (*keh ah-sees-chee oong fee-ooh-mee*; Do you want to see a movie?)
- ✓ **De que tipo de filmes gosta?** (*Jee kee chee-poh jee fee-ooh-meez goh-stah*; What type of movies do you like?)
- ✓ **Estou com vontade de assistir uma comédia.** (*eh-stoh koh-oong vohn-tah-jee jee ah-sees-chee ooh-mah koh-meh-jah*; I feel like seeing a comedy.)
- ✓ **Você espera na fila, e eu compro a pipoca.** (*voh-seh eh-speh-dah nah fee-lah, ee eh-ooh kohm-pdoh ah pee-poh-kah*; You wait in the line, and I'll buy the popcorn.)
- ✓ **Qual filme gostaria de ver?** (*kwah-ooh fee-ooh-mee gohs-tah-dee-ah jee veh*; Which movie would you like to see?)

Words to Know

Estou com vontade . . .	eh- <u>stoh</u> kohng vohn- <u>tah</u> -jee	I feel like . . . (what you feel like doing)
assistir	ah- <u>sees</u> -chee	to see (a movie, a show, TV)
uma comédia	<u>ooh</u> -mah koh- <u>meh</u> -jah	a comedy
fila	<u>fee</u> -lah	line (of people)
bom	<u>boh</u> -oong	so/well
vamos	<u>vah</u> -mohz	let's go/should we go?
espera	eh- <u>speh</u> -dah	wait
pipoca	pee- <u>poh</u> -kah	popcorn
Acha . . . ?	<u>ah</u> -shah	Do you think . . . ?



Names of non-Brazilian **filmes**, like American or European ones, are often translated slightly differently into Portuguese — and often with a funny result. My favorite is the movie *O Brother, Where Art Thou?* (2000), which was translated as **E Ai, Irmão, Cadê Você?** (ee ah-ee eeh-mah-ooh kah-deh voh-seh; Hey, Dude, Where Are You?).

Hanging Out at the Beach

Most of Brazil's population is concentrated near its **litoral** (lee-toh-dah-oo; coastline), making **praias** (pdah-ee-ahz; beaches) a focus of daily life for many locals.

It's an opportunity to sip **água de coco** (ah-gwah jee koh-koh; coconut water, sipped through a straw, out of a green coconut) or drink a **cerveja** (seh-veh-zhah; beer) with old friends and a chance to make new acquaintances, too. At urban beaches, you may see many people **fazendo cooper** (fah-zen-doh koo-peh; jogging) on the beachfront avenue and some **surfistas** (soo-fee-stahs; surfers).

What to take to the beach

It's a myth that all Brazilian **mulheres** (moo-yeh-deez; women) wear itchy-bitsy, teeny-weeny, thong bikini bottoms. In Portuguese, thong bikini bottoms are called **fio dental** (fee-oh dang-tah-oo; dental floss) — Brazilians always have a sense of humor. It is true, however, that the average top and bottom parts of a Brazilian **biquíni** (bee-kee-nee; bikini) are **menor** (meh-noh; smaller) than the average American or European bikini.

Here are some items that you're sure to see people wearing on a beach:

- ✓ **sungas** (soong-gahz; Speedo-style swim trunks)
- ✓ **bermudas** (beh-moo-dahz; longer, American-style swimming shorts — Bermuda shorts)
- ✓ **chinelos** (shee-neh-looz; flip-flops)
- ✓ **toalha** (toe-ahl-yah; towel)
- ✓ **canga** (kang-gah; sarong to sit down on)
- ✓ **óculos de sol** (oh-koo-lohz jee soh-oo; sunglasses)
- ✓ **protetor solar** (pdoh-teh-toh soh-lah; sunblock)

Check out what else you will find on a beach:

- ✓ **barraca** (bah-hah-kah; beach shack that serves food/drinks)
- ✓ **areia** (ah-day-ah; sand)
- ✓ **frescobol** (fdeh-skoo-bah-oo; beach ping-pong)

- ✓ **crianças** (kdee-ahn-sahz; kids)
- ✓ **livros** (leev-dohz; books)
- ✓ **pescadores** (pehs-kah-doh-deez; fishermen)
- ✓ **futebol** (foo-chee-bah-oooh; soccer)
- ✓ **vôlei** (voh-lay; volleyball)
- ✓ **cadeira de praia** (kah-deh-dah jee pdah-ee-ah; beach chair)
- ✓ **sombrinha** (sohm-bdeen-yah; beach umbrella. *Literally: little shade*)
- ✓ **prancha de surf** (pdahn-shah jee sooh-fee; surfboard)

You can also buy snacks, which generally cost **um real** (oong heh-ah-oooh; one Brazilian real, or about 35 cents). People walk by, shouting **Um real! Um real!** with the name of the food they're selling. Typical beach snack food includes

- ✓ **queijo coalho** (kay-zhoh koh-ahl-yoh; barbecued cheese cubes)
- ✓ **um espeto de carne** (oong eh-speh-toh jee kah-nee; a beef shish kabob)
- ✓ **amendoim** (ah-mang-doh-eeng; peanuts)
- ✓ **picolé** (pee-koh-leh; fruity popsicles)

Here's a conversation you might have when getting ready for the beach:

Paula: **Temos protetor solar?** (teh-mohz pdoh-teh-toh soh-lah? Do we have sunblock?)

Rogério: **Sim, mas só fator oito. Tá bom para ti (ok)?** (sing, maz soh fah-toh oh-ee-toh. tah boh-oong pah-dah chee? Yeah, but it's just SPF 8. Is that okay for you?)

Paula: **Sim, tá bom. Eu estou com uma canga, mas acho suficiente para os dois.** (sing, tah boh-oong. eh-oooh ehs-toh kohng ooh-mah kahng-gah, maz ah-shoo soo-fee-see-ehn-chee pah-dah ooze

doh-eez; Yeah, that's fine. I have one sarong [to lay down on], but I think it's enough for the two of us.)

Rogério: **Ótimo. Agora só quero uma cerveja.** (*oh-chee-moh. ah-goh-dah soh keh-doo ooh-mah seh-veh-zhah*; Great. Now I just want a beer.)

Paula: **Eu estou de regime. Vou tomar uma água de coco.** (*eh-ooh ehs-toh jee heh-zhee-mee. voh toh-mah oo-mah ah-gwah jee koh-koo*; I'm on a diet. I'm going to have coconut water.)

Words to Know

<i>Temos . . . ?</i>	<u>teh</u> -mohz	Do we have . . . ?
<i>fator . . .</i>	fah- <u>toh</u>	SPF . . . number
<i>para ti</i>	pah-dah <u>chee</u>	for you
<i>Tá bom.</i>	tah <u>boh-oong</u>	That's fine.
<i>acho</i>	<u>ah</u> -shoo	I think
<i>Ótimo</i>	<u>oh</u> -chee-moh	Great.
<i>agora</i>	ah- <u>goh</u> -dah	now
<i>regime</i>	heh- <u>zhee</u> -mee	diet

Talking about beach safety

Beaches are for relaxing. But before settling into your chair and making grooves into the sand, it's always best to ask some basic **perguntas** (*peh-goona-tahz*; questions) that concern your **segurança** (*seh-goo-dahn-sah*; safety). Check out some useful phrases about beach safety:

- ✓ **Tem ladrão aqui?** (tang lah-drah-oooh ah-kee; Are there pickpockets around here?)
- ✓ **É perigosa a ressaca aqui?** (eh peh-dee-goh-zoo ah heh-sah-kah ah-kee; Is the undercurrent strong here?)
- ✓ **Tem salva-vida aqui?** (tang sah-oo-vah vee-dah ah-kee; Are there any lifeguards here?)
- ✓ **Tem tubarão aqui?** (tang too-bah-dah-oooh ah-kee; Are there sharks here?)
- ✓ **A praia tem pedras?** (ah pdah-ee-ah tang peh-drahz; Is the beach rocky?)

And here are some responses you may get:

- ✓ **Sim, é perigoso.** (sing eh peh-dee-goh-zoo; Yes, it's dangerous.)
- ✓ **Sim, cuidado.** (sing, kwee-dah-doh; Yes, be careful/watch out.)
- ✓ **Não se preocupe.** (nah-oooh see pdeh-oh-koo-pee; Don't worry.)
- ✓ **Não, é tranquilo.** (nah-oooh eh tdahn-kwee-loo; No, it's safe.)



Yell **Socorro!** (soh-koh-hoo; Help!) if you're in immediate danger.

On urban beaches, flags stuck in the sand often say **Perigoso** (peh-dee-goh-zoo; Dangerous) to alert you that entering the water is unsafe.

Expressing beauty: "It's so beautiful!"

All beaches have a unique beauty, of course. Check out some phrases you can use to talk about how pretty a beach is:

- ✓ **Que bonita!** (kee boh-nee-tah; How pretty!)
- ✓ **É maravilhosa!** (eh mah-dah-vee-lee-oh-zah; It's amazing!)

- ✓ **Incrível!** (eeng-kdee-veh-ooh; Unbelievable!)
- ✓ **Nossa senhora!** (noh-sah seen-yoh-dah; Wow!)
- ✓ **Que legal!** (kee leh-gah-ooh; How cool!)
- ✓ **Meu Deus!** (meh-oo deh-ooz; Oh my God!)
- ✓ **Não acredito!** (nah-ooh ah-kdeh-jee-toh; I can't believe it!)



Nossa senhora! literally means “Our lady” and would be the English equivalent of saying, “Holy Mary, mother of God!” It’s very common in Brazil, and people often just say **Nossa!**

Getting Out for a Walk (or a Hike)

Taking **uma caminhada** (ooh-mah kah-meen-yah-dah; a walk) along the **beira-mar** (bay-dah-mah; seashore) is one of life’s simple pleasures. In Brazil, you’ll see many people walking along the beach — in order to **se divertir** (see jee-veh-chee; enjoy themselves), to **observar as pessoas** (ohb-seh-vah ahz peh-soh-az; people-watch), and for **exercício** (eh-seh-see-see-ooh; exercise).

On **praias urbanas** (pdah-ee-ahz ooh-bahn-az; urban beaches), people especially like to walk on the **calçadão** (cow-sah-dah-ooh; broad beachfront sidewalk). In Rio, the sidewalks have a famous black-and-white pattern that look like **ondas** (ohn-dahz; waves).

In Brazil’s rain forests and **mata atlântica** (mah-tah aht-lahn-chee-kah; jungle regions near the coast, in southeast Brazil) people like **fazer trilha** (fah-zeh tdeel-yah; to hike).

These phrases can help you talk about walking:

- ✓ **Eu adoro caminhar pela praia.** (eh-oooh ah-doh-doo kah-mee-yah peh-lah *pdah-ee-ah*; I love to walk on the beach.)
- ✓ **Vamos fazer uma caminhada na praia?** (vah-mohz fah-zeh ooh-mah kah-mee-yah-dah nah *pdah-ee-ah*? Shall we go for a walk on the beach?)
- ✓ **Eu preciso fazer exercício.** (eh-oooh pdah-see-zoo fah-zeh eh-seh-see-soo; I need to do exercise.)
- ✓ **Nós caminhamos pela cidade sempre.** (nohz kah-mee-yah-mohz peh-lah see-dah-jee *same-pdee*; We always walk around the city.)
- ✓ **Ela caminha muito devagar.** (eh-lah kah-mee-yah moh-ee-toh deh-vah-gah; She walks really slowly.)
- ✓ **Ele caminha muito rápido.** (eh-lee kah-mee-yah moh-ee-toh *hah-pee-doh*; He walks very fast.)
- ✓ **Eles tem que caminhar até o estacionamento.** (eh-leez *tang* kee kah-mee-yah ah-teh ooh ehs-tah-see-ohn-ah-mehn-toh; They have to walk to the parking lot.)

Here are some words associated with hiking and walking:

- ✓ **trilha** (*tdee-oooh-yah*; trail)
- ✓ **fazer trilha** (fah-zeh *tdee-oooh-yah*; to hike)
- ✓ **correr** (koh-heh; to run/jog)
- ✓ **rápido** (*hah-pee-doh*; fast)
- ✓ **devagar** (deh-vah-gah; slow)
- ✓ **caminho** (kah-mee-yo; road)
- ✓ **conversar** (kohn-veh-sah; to chat)
- ✓ **pensar** (pehn-sah; to think)
- ✓ **relaxar** (heh-lah-shah; to relax)

Playing Soccer — Brazil's National Pastime

Futebol (foo-chee-*bah*-ooh; soccer) is a very important topic in Brazil — probably even more important than **religião** (heh-lee-zhee-*ah*-ooh; religion). The fastest way to make an **amigo** (ah-mee-goo; friend) — whether it be a Brazilian man or a woman — is to share the same favorite Brazilian soccer team.

Most of Brazil's famous soccer teams are in Rio or São Paulo. Here's a quick rundown of the teams and which cities they're based in:

- ✓ **Flamengo** (flah-*mang*-goh): city of Rio
- ✓ **Botafogo** (boh-tah-*foh*-goh): city of Rio
- ✓ **São Paulo** (sah-ooh *pah*-oo-loh): city of São Paulo
- ✓ **Corinthians** (koh-*deen*-chee-ahnz): city of São Paulo
- ✓ **Santos** (*sahn*-tohz): beach city in São Paulo state — claim to fame is being Pelé's first professional team

Besides soccer, there are a few other sports that Brazilians like as well:

- ✓ **basquete** (bahs-*keh*-chee; basketball)
- ✓ **tênis** (*teh*-neez; tennis)
- ✓ **vôlei** (*voh*-lay; volleyball)
- ✓ **surfe** (*sooh*-fee; surfing)
- ✓ **natação** (nah-tah-*sah*-oong; swimming)
- ✓ **cooper** (*koo*-peh; jogging)

Check out some words that relate to all forms of exercise and recreation. All lead to **boa saúde** (boh-ah sah-ooh-jee; good health):

- ✓ **academia** (ah-kah-deh-mee-ah; gym)
- ✓ **levantar pesos** (leh-vahn-tah peh-zohz; to lift weights)
- ✓ **buggy** (boo-gee; sand-dune buggy — common in northeastern Brazil)
- ✓ **jangada** (zhahng-gah-dah; tiny sailboat — common in northeastern Brazil)
- ✓ **ir de barco** (ee jee bah-koh; to take a boat ride)
- ✓ **fazer snorkeling** (fah-zeh snoh-keh-oooh-leeng; to snorkel)
- ✓ **fazer mergulho** (fah-zeh meh-gool-yoh; to scuba dive)
- ✓ **escalada em rocha** (ehs-kah-lah-dah ang hoh-shah; rock climbing)
- ✓ **ir de bicicleta** (eed jee bee-see-kleh-tah; to go bicycling)



There are a number of places to do **esportes radicais** (eh-spoh-cheez hah-jee-kah-eez; extreme sports) in Brazil. You can **voar de asa delta** (voh-ah jee ah-zah deh-oooh-tah; go hang gliding) in Rio, over Ipanema beach.

Falling in Love — in Portuguese

Brazilian Portuguese is an extremely romantic language — not only are the sounds beautiful and melodic, but Brazilians themselves are very **românticos** (hoh-mahn-chee-kooz; romantic). And you can't separate the **língua** (ling-gwah; language) from its **cultura** (kool-too-dah; culture). The language **está cheia de poesia** (eh-stah shay-ah jee poh-eh-zee-ah; is full of poetry).

Brazilians even have a specific verb to describe the act of smooching about town with your honey: **namorar** (nah-moh-dah). The root of the verb is **amor**. What did **Jaqueline** (zhah-keh-lee-nee) do Saturday?

Ela foi namorar (*eh-lah foh-ee nah-moh-dah*; She hung out with her boyfriend).

Girlfriend, by the way, is **namorada** (*nah-moh-dah-dah*), and boyfriend is **namorado** (*nah-moh-dah-doo*). After things move along and the happy couple has a **casamento** (*kah-zah-men-toh*; wedding), they become husband and wife — **marido e mulher** (*mah-dee-doo ee mool-yeh*).

Check out some classic romantic phrases in Portuguese:

- ✓ **Eu te amo.** (*eh-oooh chee ah-moo*; I love you.)
- ✓ **Voce se casaria comigo?** (*voh-seh see kah-zah-dee-ah koh-mee-goo*; Will you marry me?)
- ✓ **Eu estou apaixonado/a.** (*eh-oooh eh-stoh ah-pah-ee-shee-oooh-nah-doo/dah*; I'm in love.)
- ✓ **Estou com muita saudade de você.** (*eh-stoh kohng moh-ee-tah sah-oooh-dah-jee jee voh-seh*; I miss you very much.)
- ✓ **Me dá um beijo.** (*mee dah oong bay-zhoh*; Give me a kiss.)
- ✓ **Eu vou te amar por toda a minha vida.** (*eh-oooh voh chee ah-mah poh toh-dah ah ming-yah vee-dah*; I'm going to love you for the rest of my life.)

And here's how Brazilians say sweet nothings:

- ✓ **o meu amor** (*oooh meh-oooh ah-moh*; my love)
- ✓ **o meu querido/a minha querida** (*oooh meh-oooh keh-dee-doo/ah ming-yah keh-dee-dah*; my honey. *Literally*: my loved one)
- ✓ **o meu fofinho/a minha fofinha** (*oooh meh-oooh foh-fing-yoh/ah ming-yah foh-fing-yah*; my sweetie. *Literally*: my soft, fluffy one)

Here are some classic romantic phrases that Brazilians use to **paquerar** (*pah-keh-dah*; flirt):

- ✓ **Você é muito lindo/a.** (*voh-seh eh moh-ee-toh leen-doh/dah*; You're really handsome/beautiful.)
- ✓ **Você tem olhos muito bonitos.** (*voh-seh tang ohl-yooz moh-ee-toh boo-nee-too*; You have very pretty eyes.)
- ✓ **Gosto muito de você.** (*goh-stoo moh-ee-toh jee voh-seh*; I really like you.)

Here are some practical phrases, too, for when you meet someone you're interested in:

- ✓ **Me dá o seu número de telefone?** (*mee dah ooh seh-ooh noo-meh-doh jee teh-leh-foh-nee*; Will you give me your phone number?)
- ✓ **O que vai fazer amanhã?** (*ooh kee vah-ee fah-zeh ah-mahn-yah*; What are you doing tomorrow?)
- ✓ **Quer ir para o cinema comigo?** (*keh ee pah-dah ooh see-neh-mah koh-mee-goo*; Do you want to go to the movies with me?)

Of course, these are all things you say after the very first question: **Qual é seu nome?** (*kwah-ooh eh seh-ooh noh-mee*; What's your name?) or **Quer dançar?** (*keh dahn-sah*; Do you want to dance?)

Chapter 8

When You Gotta Work

In This Chapter

- ▶ Talking on the phone
- ▶ Making reservations and leaving messages
- ▶ Discussing professions
- ▶ Working at the office

Dealing with the phone, making appointments, talking about your profession, and sending e-mails are all parts of a day's work. This chapter helps you get through that day in Portuguese.

Picking Up the Phone

In Brazil, most phone numbers have a two-digit prefix for the **cidade** (see-dah-jee; city) or a **código regional** (koh-jee-goo heh-jee-oh-nah-ooh; regional code), which often has a zero in front. The phone number of a famous hotel in Rio called Copacabana Palace, for example, looks like this: (021) 2548-7070. Basic phone numbers have either seven or eight digits. The **código internacional** (koh-jee-goh een-teh-nah-see-oh-nah-ooh; international calling code) for Brazil is 55.

Here are a few useful phrases Brazilians use when they're dealing with phones:

- ✓ **número de telefone** (noo-meh-doh jee teh-leh-foh-nee; phone number)
- ✓ **está errado** (ehs-tah eh-hah-doh; it's wrong)

- ✓ **está correto** (ehs-tah koh-heh-toh; it's right)
- ✓ **fazer um telefonema** (fah-zeh ooh-m teh-leh-foh-neh-mah; to make a phone call)
- ✓ **ligar para alguém** (lee-gah pah-dah ah-ooh-gang; to call someone)
- ✓ **receber chamadas** (heh-seh-beh shah-mah-dahz; receive calls)
- ✓ **atender o telefone** (ah-tehn-deh ooh teh-leh-foh-nee; to answer the phone)
- ✓ **deixar um recado** (day-shah oong heh-kah-doh; to leave a voicemail message)
- ✓ **telefones celulares** (teh-leh-foh-nee sel-loo-lah-deez; cell phones)
- ✓ **uma cabina telefônica** (ooh-mah kah-bee-nah teh-leh-foh-nee-kah; public phone booth) or **orelhão**



You can find plenty of **telefones públicos** (teh-leh-foh-nee poo-blee-koh; public phones) on Brazilian **ruas**. Locals, always with a sense of humor, call public phones **orelhões** (oh-deh-ooh-yoh-eez. *Literally*: big ears) because the phones are housed in a semi-open booth that resembles a three-foot tall **orelha** (oh-deh-ooh-yah; ear). All you have to do is **comprar** (kohm-pdah; buy) a **cartão telefônico** (kah-tah-ooh teh-leh-foh-nee-koh; phone card) from any **banca de jornal** (bahn-kah jee zhoh-nah-ooh; news kiosk) on the **rua** (hoo-ah; street).

Saying hello and goodbye

Your phone is ringing. **Não se preocupe** (nah-ooh see pdeh-oh-koo-pee; Don't sweat it). I'll start with the greeting and goodbye words — they're a cinch.

Perhaps the hotel receptionist is calling you, telling you there's **alguém** (ah-ooh-gang; someone) to see

you in the lobby. Or **talvez** (*tah-oooh- vehz*; maybe) it's your **agente de viagens** (*ah-zhang-shee jee vee-ah-zhangs*; travel agent), ready to book your **vôo** (*voh-oooh*; flight) to the Amazon. Either way, answering the call is **fácil** (*fah-see-oooh*; easy).

Here's what you say:

- ✓ **Alô?** (*ah-loh*; Hello? [formal])
- ✓ **Sim?** (*sing*; Yes?)
- ✓ **Oi.** (*oy-ee*; Hi. [informal])

Here's what you can say before you hang up the phone:

- ✓ **Tchau.** (*chow*; Bye. *Literally*: Ciao, like in Italian.)
- ✓ **Até logo.** (*ah-teh loh-goo*; Bye. *Literally*: Until soon.)
- ✓ **Até mais.** (*ah-teh mah-eez*; Bye. *Literally*: Until more.)
- ✓ **Até amanhã.** (*ah-teh ah-mahn-yah*; Talk to/See you tomorrow. *Literally*: Until tomorrow.)



Brazilians are very **carinhosos** (*kah-deen-yoh-zooz*; affectionate). When a **chamada** (*shah-mah-dah*; phone call) ends between two female friends, a male and a female friend, or two family members, Brazilians often say **Um beijo** (*oong bay-zhoh*; A kiss) or **Um abraço** (*oong ah-bdah-soo*; A hug).

Making a call

Making phone calls in a different language can be kind of intimidating, but **você está com sorte!** (*voh-seh eh-stah kohng soh-chee*; you're in luck!). First, Brazilians typically talk reasonably **devagar** (*deh-vah-gah*; slowly), and they tend to clearly enunciate their syllables. So go native: Relax. **Fique tranquilo** (*fee-kee tdahn-kwee-loh*; Don't worry).

Here are some example sentences about making a call:

- ✓ **Ligo para os Estados Unidos todos os dias.** (*lee-goh pah-dah ooz eh-stah-dooz ooh-nee-dohz toh-dooz ooz jee-ahz*; I call the United States every day.)
- ✓ **Ela liga para o namorado dela cinco vezes por dia.** (*eh-lah lee-gah pah-dah ooh nah-moh-dah-doh deh-lah seen-koh veh-zeez poh jee-ah*; She calls her boyfriend five times a day.)
- ✓ **Você liga para a sua mãe muito?** (*voh-seh lee-gah pah-dah ah soo-ah mah-ee moh-ee-toh*; Do you call your mom often?)



The verb **ligar** (*lee-gah*; to call) is almost always packaged with **para** — as in **ligar para** (*lee-gah pah-dah*; to call) someone or someplace. To use this expression, use **ligar para** plus the name of the person or place.

Here's a sample conversation of a short phone call:

Operator: **Bom dia. Hotel do Sol Ipanema.** (*boh-oong jee-ah. oh-teh-oooh doo soh-oooh eeh-pah-neh-mah*; Good morning. Sun Hotel, Ipanema.)

Patricia: **Bom dia. Poderia me comunicar com a Roberta Fernandes, quarto número setecentos e oitenta e três, por gentileza?** (*boh-oong jee-ah. poh-deh-dee-ah mee koh-moo-nee-kah koh-oong ah hoh-beh-tah feh-nahn-jeez, kwah-toh noo-meh-doh seh-chee oh-ee-toh tdehz, poh zhehn-chee-leh-zah*; Good morning. Could you connect me with Roberta Fernandes, room number 783, please?)

Operator: **Quem fala?** (*kang fah-lah*? Who's calling?)

Patricia: **Sou a Patricia Assunção.** (*soh ah pah-tdee-see-ah ah-soong-sah-oooh*; This is Patricia Assunção.)

Operator: **Só um momento, por favor.** (*soh oong moh-mehn-toh, poh-fah-voh*; Just a moment, please.)

Words to Know

Poderia me comunicar com ...	poh-deh- <u>dee</u> - ah mee koh- moo-nee- <u>kah</u> koh-oong	Could you connect me with ...
por gentileza	poh zhehn- chee- <u>lay</u> -zah	please (formal)
Quem fala?	kang <u>fah</u> -lah	Who's calling?
Sou ...	soh-ooh	It's ... (name)
Só um momento.	soh oong moh- <u>mehn</u> - toh	Just a moment.



The expression **ligar para** (to call) someone has a slang meaning. It can also mean “to have a crush on” someone or “to pay attention to” someone or something. **Ele liga muito para ela** (*eh-lee lee-gah moh-ee-toh pah-dah eh-lah*) means “He has a crush on her.”

Dealing with verbal mush

The first phone **conversa** (*kohn-veh-sah*; conversation) in any new language is tough. You can't see the person's face as she's talking, or see her body language. You feel **nervoso** (*neh-voh-zoo*; nervous) that you're taking up her valuable time. The connection may be bad. Her **palavras** (*pah-lahv-dahz*; words) come out sounding like mush.

The Brazilian **sotaque** (*soh-tah-kee*; accent) is particularly strange-sounding in the beginning, especially the abundance of nasal vowels throws off even people with a good knowledge of Portuguese words and grammar.



Se não entende (see nah-oooh ehn-*tehn*-jee; If you don't understand) what the person calling you is saying, you can try asking **Fala inglês?** (*fah-lah eeng-gleh*z; Do you speak English?)

Here's a conversation between coworkers that turns to mush:

Flavia: **Olá, o Carlos está?** (*oh-lah, oooh kah-loh*z ehs-*tah*? Hello, is Carlos there?)

Voice on other side: **Krnha estrn galades.**
(Unintelligible.)

Flavia: **Poderia falar um pouco mais devagar, por favor?** (*poh-deh-dee-ah fah-lah oong poh-koh mah-eez deh-vah-gah, poh-fah-voh*? Could you speak a little more slowly, please?)

Voice on other side: **Sod snod manjekof.**
(Unintelligible.)

Flavia: **Não estou te escutando. Está ruim a linha.** (*nah-oooh ehs-toh chee ehs-koo-tahn-doh. ehs-tah hoo-eeng ah leen-yah*. I can't hear you. The connection is bad.)

Voice on other side: **No momento, não se encontra.** (*noh moh-mehn-toh, nah-oooh see ehn-kohn-tdah*. He's not here right now.)

Flavia: **Ligo mais tarde, obrigada.** (*lee-goh mah-eez tah-jee, oh-bdee-gah-dah*. I'll call later, thanks.)

Words to Know

não se encontra	<u>nah</u> -oooh see ehn- <u>kohn</u> -tdah	he/she isn't here (formal)
não está	<u>nah</u> -oooh eh- <u>stah</u>	he/she isn't here (informal)
a linha	ah <u>leen</u> -yah	the phone line

<i>devagar</i>	<i>deh-vah-gah</i>	slowly
<i>mais tarde</i>	<i>mah-eez tah-jee</i>	later
<i>no momento</i>	<i>noh moh-mehn-toh</i>	right now (formal)



If you want to say “right now” and you’re not talking on the phone, you can say **agora mesmo** (ah-goh-dah mehs-moh. *Literally*: right now). **No momento** is frequently used on the phone with strangers because it sounds more formal.

Talking in the past

Sometimes you need to talk about things in the past tense when you’re on the phone. Here are some relevant phrases (check out Chapter 2 to see how to conjugate verbs in the past tense):

- ✓ **Ligaram para você ontem.** (lee-gah-dah-ooh pah-dah voh-seh ohn-tang; They called you yesterday.)
- ✓ **Já liguei para ele.** (zhah lee-gay pah-dah eh-lee; I already called him.) Don’t worry that the **eu** (I) form uses the stem **ligu-** while the others use the simple **lig-** stem. This means the verb **ligar** is *irregular* for the **eu** form. But spoken out loud, you can’t hear the *u*. So don’t sweat it.
- ✓ **Você não me ligou.** (voh-seh nah-ooh mee lee-goh; You didn’t call me.)
Deixou recado? (day-shoh heh-kah-doh; Did you leave a message?)
Achamos que ele estava doente. (ah-shah-mohz kee eh-lee eh-stah-vah doh-ehn-chee; We thought he was sick.)
- ✓ **Nós fomos para a praia no domingo.** (nohz foh-mooz pah-dah pdah-ee-ah noh doh-ming-goh; We went to the beach on Sunday.)

- ✓ **Para onde ela foi?** (pah-dah ohn-jee eh-lah foh-ee; Where did she go?)
- ✓ **Eles foram jantar num restaurante.** (eh-leez foh-dah-oooh zhahn-tah noong heh-stah-oooh-dahn-chee; They went to have dinner at a restaurant.)

And check out Table 8-1 for some common time references that signal the past tense.

Table 8-1 Past-Tense Time References		
Term	Pronunciation	Meaning
ontem	ohn-tang	yesterday
na semana passada	nah she-mah-mah pah-sah-dah	last week
hoje de manhã	oh-zhee jee mahn-yah	this morning
ontem à noite	ohn-tang ah noh-ee-chee	last night
faz alguns dias	fah-eez ah-oooh goonz jee-ahz	a few days ago
faz vinte minutos	fah-eez veen-chee mee- noo-tohz	20 minutes ago
faz muito tempo	fah-eez moh-ee-toh tehm-poh	a long time ago
no ano passado	noh ah-noh pah-sah-doh	last year

Talking about Work

Brazilians generally don't ask you what you do within the first few minutes of meeting you. Some locals consider the question rude. But aside from the Brazilian etiquette about not immediately asking someone about his or her occupation, conversations about work and professions don't vary much from those in other countries. In fact, you may notice that many Portuguese words about work are similar to those in English.

Here are some questions you can ask your new friends when the time's right:

- ✓ **Estuda ou trabalha?** (*ehs-too-dah ooh tdah-bahl-yah*; Do you study or work?)
- ✓ **Qual a sua profissão?** (*kwah-oooh ah soo-ah pdoh-fee-sah-oooh*; What's your profession?)
- ✓ **Gosta do seu trabalho?** (*goh-stah doo seh-oooh tdah-bahl-yoh*; Do you like your work?)
- ✓ **Há quanto tempo trabalha nisso?** (*ah kwan-toh tang-poh tdah-bahl-yah nee-soh*; How long have you been in this line of work?)

You can answer these questions in several ways. Some jobs are best expressed by **eu faço . . .** (*eh-oooh fah-soh*; *I do . . .*) plus the name of the profession. For example, **Eu faço . . .**

- ✓ **marketing** (*mah-keh-cheeng*; marketing)
- ✓ **desenho** (*dee-zehn-yoh*; design)
- ✓ **advertising** (*ahj-veh-ty-zeeng*; advertising)
- ✓ **relações públicas** (*heh-lah-soy-eez poob-lee-kahz*; public relations)
- ✓ **análise de contas** (*ah-nah-lah-zee jee kohn-tahz*; account-analysis)
- ✓ **produção de filmes** (*pdoh-doo-sah-oooh jee fee-oooh-meez*; film production)

Another common way to express someone's occupation is by saying **trabalha de** plus the name of the job. Someone may ask **Ele/ela faz o quê?** (*eh-lee/eh-lah fah-eez ooh keh*; What does he/she do?). You can respond:

- ✓ **Ela trabalha de faxineira.** (*eh-lah tdah-bahl-yah jee fah-shee-nay-dah*; She works as a cleaning lady.)
- ✓ **Ele trabalha de cozinheiro.** (*eh-lee tdah-bahl-yah jee koh-zing-yay-doh*; He works as a cook.)
- ✓ **Ele trabalha de condutor de ônibus.** (*eh-lee tdah-bahl-yah jee kohn-doo-toh jee oh-nee-boos*; He works as a bus driver.)

Here are some other ways to respond to questions about profession:

- ✓ **Eu trabalho na área de . . .** (*eh-oooh tdah-bahl-yoh nah ah-dee-ah jee*; I work in the field of . . .)
- ✓ **Eu estudo . . .** (*eh-oooh ehs-too-doh*; I study . . .)
- ✓ **Eu sou . . .** (*eh-oooh soh*; I'm . . . [profession])

Check out Table 8-2 for some common occupations.

Table 8-2 Occupations		
<i>Occupation</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
estudante	es-too-dahn-chee	student
professor/a	pdoh-feh-soh-dah	teacher
médico	meh-jee-koh	doctor
advogado/a	ahj-voh-gah-doh	lawyer
jornalista	zhoh-nah-lee-stah	journalist
banqueiro	bahng-kay-doh	banker
cozinheiro	koh-zeen-yay-doh	chef
executivo	eh-zeh-koo-chee-voh	executive
artista	ah-chees-tah	artist
diretor de . . .	jee-deh-toh jee	director of . . .
gerente de . . .	jeh-dang-chee jee	manager of . . .

The following sample conversation employs profession vocab:

Man: **O que você faz?** (*oh keh voh-seh faz?* What do you do?)

Woman: **Sou professora de inglês. E você?** (*soh pdoh-feh-soh-dah jee een-gleh-z. ee voh-seh?* I'm an English teacher. And you?)

Man: **Legal. Eu sou advogado.** (lay-gah-oooh. eh-oooh soh-oooh ahj-voh-gah-doo; Cool. I'm a lawyer.)

Woman: **Interessante. Você gosta do seu trabalho?** (een-teh-deh-sahn-chee. voh-say goh-stah doo seh-oooh tdah-bahl-yoo? Interesting. Do you like your job?)

Man: **Sim, gosto. E você, há quanto tempo é professora?** (sing, goh-stoo. ee voh-say, ah kwahn-toh tang-poh eh pdoh-feh-soh-dah? Yeah, I like it. And what about you, how long have you been a teacher?)

Woman: **Faz dez anos que eu sou professora de inglês.** (fah-eez day-eez ah-nohz kee eh-oooh soh pdoh-feh-soh-dah jee een-gleh-z; I've been an English teacher for ten years.)

Words to Know

O que você faz? oh keh voh-seh faz What do you do?

há quanto tempo é . . . ?	ah <u>kwahn</u> -toh <u>tang</u> -poh eh	How long have you been a . . . (profession)?
---------------------------	------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------



Faz plus the number of years is a handy way of saying, "It's been (number of years) since . . .":

- ✓ **Faz dez anos que eu não falo inglês.** (fah-eez deh-z ah-nohz kee eh-oooh nah-oooh fah-loh eeng-gleh-z; It's been ten years since I've spoken English.)
- ✓ **Faz um ano que eu estou sem trabalho.** (fah-eez oong ah-noh kee eh-oooh ehs-toh sang tdah-bahl-yoh; I've been out of work for a year.)

Or you can say **Faz muito tempo que . . .** to mean “It’s been a long time since . . .” without mentioning the number of years. Here’s an example:

Faz muito tempo que eu fui para o Rio de Janeiro. (fah-eez moo-ee-toh tang-poh kee eh-oooh nah-oooh voh pah-dah ooh hee-oooh jee jah-nay-doh; It’s been a long time since I’ve been to Rio.)

Dealing with Computers

When you’re at the office, here are some typical words that you run in to:

- ✓ **escritório** (eh-skdee-toh-dee-oh; office)
- ✓ **caneta** (kah-neh-tah; pen)
- ✓ **computador** (kohm-poo-tah-doh; computer)
- ✓ **notebook** (notch-book-ee; laptop)
- ✓ **responder** (hehs-pohn-deh; to answer)
- ✓ **imprimir** (eemp-dee-mee; to print out)

When you need to plan a meeting, some of these phrases may come in handy:

Ana: **Bom dia, Carlos. Vamos planejar a reunião?** (boh-oong jee-ah kah-looz. vah-mohz plahn-eh-i ah heh-oooh-nee-ah-oooh? Good morning Carlos. Shall we plan the meeting?)

Carlos: **Sim. Vai ser a que horas?** (sing. vah-ee seh ah kee oh-dahs? Yes. What time will it be?)

Ana: **Às quatorze horas. Convide todo mundo.** (ahz kah-toh-zee oh-dahz. kohn-vee-jee toh-doo moon-doh; At two o’clock. Invite everyone.)

Carlos: **OK. Vou enviar um e-mail agora para todos.** (ah-kay-ee. voh en-vee-ah oong ee-may-oh ah-goh-dah pah-dah toh-dooz; Okay. I’m going to send an e-mail now to everyone.)

Ana: **Perfeito. Depois me manda um e-mail com todos os nomes.** (peh-fay-toh. deh-poy-eez mee mahn-dah oong ee-may-oh koh-oong toh-dohz oohz noh-meez; Perfect. Afterward, send me an e-mail with all the names.)

Carlos: **Tá bom. Não se preocupe, e eu espero que melhore.** (tah boh-oong. nah-oooh see pdeh-oh-koo-pee poh ees-toh, eh eh-oooh eh-sped-oh kee mehl-yoh-dee; Okay. Don't worry, and I hope you get better.)

Words to Know

planejar	plahn-eh- <u>zhah</u>	to plan
reunião	hay-oon-ee- <u>ah</u> -ooh	meeting
enviar	ang-vee- <u>ah</u>	to send
e-mail	ee- <u>may</u> -oh	e-mail
confêrencia	kohn-feh- <u>dehn</u> -see-ah	conference

Many Brazilians use the Internet. And because they're such social people, they spend a lot of time chatting online. Here are some common words and abbreviations used when e-mailing:

- ✓ **Oi** (Hi)
- ✓ **Olá** (Hello)
- ✓ **Prezado . . .** (Dear . . . [formal])
- ✓ **vc** (you [informal; short for você])
- ✓ **vcs** (you guys [informal; short for vocês])
- ✓ **Abs**, (Hugs, [informal; short for abraços])
- ✓ **Bjs**, (Kisses, [informal; short for beijos])
- ✓ **Saudações**, (Greetings, [formal])
- ✓ **Atenciosamente**, (Attentively, [formal])



The symbol @ in Portuguese is called the **arroba** and is pronounced ah-*hoh*-bah. If you have a period in your e-mail, you may want to remember that's called a **ponto** (*pohn*-toh).

Chapter 9

I Get Around: Transportation

In This Chapter

- ▶ Choosing transportation
- ▶ Getting directions

Brazil is a vast country, just about the same size as the United States, and the best way to **viajar** (vee-ah-zhah; go. *Literally:* to voyage) from place to faraway place is by **ônibus** (oh-nee-boos; bus) or **avião** (ah-vee-ah-ooh; plane). **Trens** (tdangz; trains) are seldom used. You can also **alugar um carro** (ah-loo-gah oong kah-hoh; rent a car).

This chapter tells you what you need to get around, from accessing **taxi** services to discussing whether buses are on schedule to asking for directions. Here are a few quick transportation-related phrases:

- ✓ **Vamos embora!** (vah-mooz em-boh-dah; Let's go!)
- ✓ **Como se chega?** (koh-moo see sheh-gah; How do you get there?)
- ✓ **Quanto tempo demora para chegar?** (kwahn-toh teh-m-poh deh-moh-dah pah-dah sheh-gah; How long does it take to get there?)
- ✓ **Eu vou para . . .** (eh-ooh voh pah-dah; I'm going to . . .)

- ✓ **Vamos para . . .** (*vah-mohz pah-dah*; We're going to . . .)
- ✓ **Eu fui para . . .** (*eh-oooh fwee pah-dah*; I went to . . .)

On the Move: Transportation

Getting where you need to go is very important and knowing the right phrases makes it a whole lot easier. This section gets you moving.

Making a plane reservation

If you're in Brazil for longer than just a few days, you may decide to schedule a **viagem** (*vee-ah-zhang*; trip) somewhere within the country. There are **agências de viagens** (*ah-zhang-see-ahz jee vee-ah-zhangz*; travel agencies) all over the place in major cities, so finding one shouldn't be hard. This is where you **fazer uma reserva** (*fah-zeh ooh-mah heh-zeh-vah*; make a reservation) for transportation. Here are some questions the agent may ask you:

- ✓ **Olá, posso ajudar?** (*oh-lah poh-soo ah-zhoo-dah*; Hello, can I help you?)
- ✓ **Qual é o destino?** (*kwah-oooh eh ooh dehs-chee-noo*; What is the destination?)
- ✓ **Para quantos dias?** (*pah-dah kwahn-toooh jee-ahz*; For how many days?)
- ✓ **Quantos passageiros?** (*kwahn-tohz pah-sah-zhay-dooz*; How many passengers?)
- ✓ **Importa o horário do dia?** (*eem-poh-tah ooh oh-dah-dee-oooh doh jee-ah*; Does the time of day matter?)
- ✓ **Quer reservar o vôo?** (*keh heh-seh-vah ooh voh*; Do you want to reserve the flight?)
- ✓ **Como vai pagar?** (*koh-moo vah-ee pah-gah*; How do you want to pay?)

You may want to ask which flight is **mais barato** (*mah-eez bah-dah-toh*; cheaper) or whether the agency can offer you a **pacote** (*pah-koh-chee*; package) that includes the hotel. Here are some other key terms for reserving flights:

- ✓ **bilhete** (*beel-yeh-chee*; ticket)
- ✓ **assento** (*ah-sehn-too*; seat)
- ✓ **janela** (*zhah-neh-lah*; window)
- ✓ **corredor** (*koh-heh-doh*; aisle)
- ✓ **primeira classe** (*pdee-may-dah klah-see*; first class)
- ✓ **classe econômica** (*klah-see eh-koh-noh-mee-kah*; economy class/coach)
- ✓ **ida e volta** (*ee-dah ee voh-oo-h-tah*; round-trip)
- ✓ **somente ida** (*soh-mehn-chee ee-dah*; one-way)
- ✓ **de** (*jee*; from)
- ✓ **para** (*pah-dah*; to)
- ✓ **data da ida** (*dah-tah dah ee-dah*; departure date)
- ✓ **data da volta** (*dah-tah dah voh-oo-h-tah*; return date)
- ✓ **horário dos vôos** (*oh-dah-dee-oo-h dooz voh-ooz*; flight schedule)
- ✓ **formas de pagamento** (*foh-mahz jee pah-gah-mehn-toh*; method of payment)

The following conversation is one you may have with a travel agent:

Travel agent: **Olá, posso ajudar?** (*oh-lah, poh-soo ah-zhoo-dah*; Hello, can I help you?)

Daniela: **Queria fazer uma reserva para ir para o Rio.** (*kee-dee-ah fah-zeh ooh-mah heh-zeh-vah pah-dah ee pah-dah ooh hee-oo-h*; I'd like to make a reservation to go to Rio.)

Travel agent: **Que dia?** (*kee jee-ah*; Which day?)

Daniela: **Na sexta, retornando no domingo.** (nah *sehs*-tah, heh-toh-*nahn*-doh noh doh-*ming*-goh; For Friday, coming back on Sunday.)

Travel agent: **Olha, não sei se tem vaga. Mas vou checar.** (*ohl*-yah, nah-oooh *say* see tang *vah*-gah. mah-eez *voh* sheh-*kah*; To be honest, I don't know if there are any seats. But I'll check.)

Daniela: **Posso retornar também na segunda, de manhãzinha.** (*poh*-soo heh-toh-*nah* tahm-*bang* nah seh-*goon*-dah, jee mahn-yah-*zing*-yah; I can also return on Monday, really early.)

Travel agent: **Aí vai ser mais fácil.** (ah-*ee vah*-ee seh mah-eez *fah*-see-oooh; Now that will be easier.)

Daniela: **Fantástico.** (*fahn*-tahs-chee-koh; Fantastic.)

Travel agent: **Tem duas opções — na Gol e na Vasp.** (tang *doo*-ahz ohp-*soh*-eez — nah *goh*-oooh ee nah *vah*-spee; You have two options — on Gol and on Vasp.)

Daniela: **Ótimo.** (*oh*-chee-moh; Great.)

Words to Know

retornando	heh-toh- <u>nahn</u> -doh	returning/ coming back
vaga	<u>vah</u> -gah	seat/available spot
checar	sheh- <u>kah</u>	to check
retornar	heh-toh- <u>nah</u>	to return
de manhãzinha	jee mah-yah- <u>zing</u> -yah	really early in the morning
vai ser	<u>vah</u> -ee <u>seh</u> (ok)	it will be
opções	ohp- <u>soh</u> -eez	options

In Brazil, there's usually a **taxa de embarque** (*tah-shah jee em-bah-kee*; boarding tax). It's significant for international flights, at around US\$80 but only about US\$3 for domestic flights. The **taxa** will be included in the quoted flight price.

Here are some useful words and phrases you can use when you travel internationally:

- ✓ **comprar um bilhete de avião** (*kohm-pdah oong beel-yeh-chee jee ah-vee-ah-oo*; to buy an airline ticket)
- ✓ **levar o seu passaporte** (*leh-vah ooh seh-oo pah-sah-poh-chee*; to bring your passport)
- ✓ **preencher as fichas** (*pdehn-sheh ahz fee-shahz*; to fill out forms)
- ✓ **a bagagem** (*ah bah-gah-zhang*; the baggage)
- ✓ **o visto** (*ooh vee-stoh*; the visa)
- ✓ **o consulado** (*ooh kohn-soo-lah-doh*; the consulate)
- ✓ **a embaixada** (*ah ehm-bah-ee-shah-dah*; the embassy)
- ✓ **o aeroporto** (*ooh ah-eh-doh-poh-too*; the airport)
- ✓ **a alfândega** (*ah ah-oo-fahn-deh-gah*; Customs)
- ✓ **a multa** (*ah mool-tah*; the fine)
- ✓ **os impostos** (*oohz eem-poh-stooz*; taxes)
- ✓ **a Loja Franca** (*ah loh-zah fdahn-kah*; duty-free)
- ✓ **nada a declarar** (*nah-dah ah deh-klah-dah*; nothing to declare)
- ✓ **a segurança** (*ah seh-goo-dahn-sah*; security)

Check on the Web site of the Brazilian **embaixada** in your **país** (*pah-eez*; country) to find out whether you need a **visto** to enter Brazil.

Taking buses

In Brazil, you can take an **ônibus** (*oh-nee-boos*; bus) to travel long distances between cities or the **ônibus urbano** (*oh-nee-boos ooh-bah-noh*; city bus) to get around town. Here are some words to get you started:

- ✓ **passagem de ônibus** (*pah-sah-zhang jee oh-nee-boos*; bus ticket)
- ✓ **rodoviária** (*hoh-doh-vee-ah-dee-ah*; central bus station)
- ✓ **poltrona** (*pohl-tdoh-nah*; seat)
- ✓ **origem** (*oh-dee-zhang*; name of city you're traveling from/origin)
- ✓ **destino** (*dehs-chee-noo*; destination)
- ✓ **data** (*dah-tah*; date)

Keep in mind that Brazilians use military time for bus tickets. Eight o'clock at night becomes **às vinte horas** (*ahz veen-chee oh-dahz*; at 8 p.m./at 20:00 hours). (See Chapter 3 for more on telling time.)

Check out some phrases you can use either with the **motorista** (*moh-toh-dee-stah*; driver) or another **passageiro** (*pah-sah-zhay-doo*; passenger):

- ✓ **O ônibus está atrasado?** (*ooh oh-nee-boos eh-stah ah-tdah-zah-doo*; Is the bus late?)
- ✓ **O ônibus sai às onze e quarenta.** (*ooh oh-nee-boos sah-ee ahz ohn-zee ee kwah-den-tah*; The bus leaves at 11:40.)
- ✓ **Vai para . . . ?** (*vah-ee pah-dah*; Do you go to . . . ?)
- ✓ **Pára na Rua . . . ?** (*pah-dah nah hoo-ah*; Do you stop on . . . Street?)
- ✓ **Quanto é?** (*kwahn-toh kee eh*; How much?)

Hailing taxis

Táxis (*talk-seez*; taxis) are plentiful and cheap in Brazil. You can flag one down in the street, just as you

would in big cities anywhere else in the world. If you're having trouble finding one, ask someone whether a **ponto de táxi** (*pohn-toh jee talk-see*; place where taxis line up to wait for passengers) is nearby.

The **ponto de táxi** consists of a bunch of taxi drivers sitting on a bench, sometimes watching a **novela** (*noh-veh-lah*; soap opera) or **jogo de futebol** (*zhoh-goo jee foo-chee-bah-ooh*; soccer match) on an overhead TV.

Here's some taxi talk:

- ✓ **Para . . . por favor.** (*pah-dah . . . poh fah-voh*; To . . . [location], please.)
- ✓ **Sabe como chegar em . . . ?** (*sah-bee koh-moo sheh-gah ang*; Do you know how to get to . . . ?)
- ✓ **Quanto seria para ir a . . . ?** (*kwahn-toh seh-dee-ah pah-dah ee ah*; How much would it be to go to . . . ?)
- ✓ **É perto?** (*eh peh-too*; Is it close?)
- ✓ **É longe?** (*eh lohn-zhee*; Is it far?)



Before you agree to ride, ask the **taxista** (*tahk-sees-tah*; taxi driver) whether he knows where your destination is. Here's a conversation demonstrating taxi talk:

Ricardo: **Olá, é longe o Maracanã?** (*oh-lah, eh lohn-zhee ooh mah-dah-kah-nah*; Hi. Is Maracanã Stadium far?)

Taxi driver: **Não, e pertinho.** (*nah-ooh, eh peh-ching-yoo*; No, it's really close.)

Ricardo: **Quanto custaria?** (*kwahn-toh koos-tah-dee-ah*; How much would it cost?)

Taxi driver: **Uns dez reais.** (*oonz dez heh-eyes*; About 10 reais.)

Ricardo: **Tá bom.** (*tah boh-oong*; Okay.)

Taxi driver: **É a sua primeira vez no Rio de Janeiro?** (*eh ah soo-ah pdee-may-dah vez noh hee-ooh jee zhah-nay-doh*; Is it your first time in Rio?)

Ricardo: **É. E nós estamos muito emocionados ao ver o famoso Maracanã.** (eh. ee nohz eh-stah-mooz moh-ee-toh eh-moh-see-ooh-nah-dooz ah-ooh *veh* ooh fah-moh-zoo mah-dah-kah-nah; Yeah. And we're really excited to see the famous Maracanã.)

Taxi driver: **Não tem jogo hoje.** (nah-ooh tang zhoh-goo oh-zhee; There's no game today.)

Ricardo: **Tá bom, é só para ver.** (tah boh-oong, eh soh pah-dah *veh*; That's okay. It's just to take a look.)

Words to Know

pertinho	peh- <u>ching</u> -yoh	very close/close by
uns	oonz	about/some
vez	vez	time
emocionados	eh-moh-see-ooh- <u>nah</u> -dooz	excited
famoso	fah-moh- <u>zoo</u>	famous

Renting a car

If you're the adventurous type, you may decide to **alugar um carro** (ah-loo-gah oong kah-hoh; rent a car) from a **locadora de carros** (loh-kah-doh-dah jee kah-hohz; car-rental agency) in Brazil. You're probably already familiar with several international rental agencies in Brazil, like Hertz and Avis. Here are some questions to ask at a **locadora**:

- ✓ **Tem um carro disponível para hoje?** (tang oong kah-hoh jee-spoh-nee-veh-ooh pah-dah oh-zhee; Do you have a car available for today?)

- ✓ **Qual é a tarifa diária para esse modelo?** (*kwah-ooh eh ah tah-dee-fah jee-ah-dee-ah pah-dah eh-see moh-deh-loo*; What's the day rate for this [car] make?)
- ✓ **Tem assistência vinte-quatro horas?** (*tang ah-see-stehn-see-ah ving-chee kwah-tdoh oh-dahz*; Do you have 24-hour roadside assistance?)
- ✓ **Tem alguma promoção?** (*tang ah-ooh-goo-mah pdoh-moh-sah-ooh*; Do you have any deals/promotions going on?)
- ✓ **Oferece um plano de seguro?** (*oh-feh-deh-see oong plah-noh jee seh-goo-doh*; Do you offer an insurance plan?)

You may also want to get familiar with the names of the parts of a car in Portuguese — here are the basics:

- ✓ **volante** (*voh-lahn-chee*; steering wheel)
- ✓ **freios** (*fday-oohz*; brakes)
- ✓ **rodas** (*hoh-dahz*; wheels)
- ✓ **pára-brisa** (*pah-dah-bdee-sah*; windshield)
- ✓ **motor** (*moh-toh*; engine)

Here are another couple of questions you may need to ask about driving in general:

- ✓ **As estradas em . . . são boas ou ruins?** (*ahz eh-stdah-dahz ang . . . sah-ooh boh-ahz oh hoo-eenz*; Are the roads in . . . [location] good or bad?)
- ✓ **Tem um mecânico por aqui?** (*tang oong meh-kah-nee-koh poh ah-kee*; Is there a mechanic around here?)

The shapes and colors of the **placas** (*plah-kahz*; road signs) in Brazil are pretty much the same as in English-speaking countries.

You may scratch your head when you first visit a **posto de gasolina** (*poh-stoo jee gah-zoo-lee-nah*; gas station): In addition to **gasolina**, you sometimes have the option of choosing **álcool** (*ah-ooh-koh-ooh*; alcohol), a fuel

made from **cana de açúcar** (*kah-nah jee ah-soo-kah*; sugarcane) that's cheaper than **gasolina**. The price difference is about US\$2.30 per gallon of alcohol, compared with about US\$4 per gallon of gasoline. Many cars made in Brazil use technology that converts the alcohol to car fuel. Ask your rental-shop employees which you can use with your car.

Words to Know

carteira de habilitação	kah- <u>tay</u> -dah jee ah- <u>bee</u> -lee-tah- <u>sah</u> -ooh	driver's license
postos de gasolina	<u>poh</u> -stooz jee gah-zoo- <u>lee</u> -nah	gas stations
tanque de gasolina	<u>tan</u> -kee jee gah-zoh- <u>lee</u> -nah	gas tank
quilometragem livre	<u>kee</u> -loo-meh- <u>tdah</u> -zhang <u>leev</u> -dee	unlimited mileage
retirada	heh- <u>chee</u> -dah-dah	check-out
devolução	deh-voh-loo- <u>sah</u> -ooh	check-in

Onde? Where? The Question for Going Places

The word **onde** (*ohn-jee*; where) can be your best friend as you navigate any new place in Brazil. *Where is . . .* is expressed in three ways: **Onde é** (*ohn-jee eh*), **Onde fica** (*ohn-jee fee-kah*), and **Onde está** (*ohn-jee eh-stah*).



Onde é is used more for people and general locations, whereas **Onde fica** and **Onde está** are used to ask for the precise location of something. **Onde é Macau?** (*ohn-jee ee mah-kah-oo*; Where is Macau?) someone asks. They expect to hear an answer like “in Asia,” not the precise latitude and longitude of Macau. But by asking **Onde fica aquela loja?** (*ohn-jee fee-kah ah-keh-lah loh-zah*; Where is that store?), you expect someone to explain the street, the cross street, and maybe the exact address so that you have no problems finding it. Generally speaking, **onde fica** is more commonly used than **onde está**.

Check out some common variations of phrases that use **onde**:

- ✓ **Para onde . . . ?** (*pah-dah ohn-jee*; To where . . . ?)
- ✓ **Onde é . . . ?** (*ohn-jee eh*; Where is . . . ?)
- ✓ **Sabe onde fica . . . ?** (*sah-bee ohn-jee fee-kah*; Do you know where . . . is located?)
- ✓ **Sabe onde tem . . . ?** (*sah-bee ohn-jee tang*; Do you know where there's a . . . ?)
- ✓ **De onde . . . ?** (*jee ohn-jee*; From where . . . ?)

Here are some sentences that use **onde** phrases:

- ✓ **Para onde vai esse ônibus?** (*pah-dah ohn-jee vah-ee eh-see oh-nee-boos*; Where does this bus go to?)
- ✓ **Onde é a Rua Pedralbes?** (*ohn-jee eh ah hoo-ah peh-drah-oo-beez*; Where is Pedralbes Street?)
- ✓ **Sabe onde fica o Citibank?** (*sah-bee ohn-jee fee-kah ooh see-chee-bahn-kee*; Do you know where the Citibank is located?)
- ✓ **Sabe onde tem um supermercado?** (*sah-bee ohn-jee tang oong soo-peh-meh-kah-doh*; Do you know where there's a supermarket?)
- ✓ **De onde é o cantor?** (*jee ohn-jee eh ooh kahn-toh*; Where is the singer from?)

Another useful phrase is **Estou procurando . . .** (eh-stoh pdoh-koo-dahn-doh; I'm looking for . . .). The phrase uses the verb **procurar** (pdoh-koo-dah; to look/search for). The verb is related to the old-fashioned word *procure* in English.

Here's a conversation using various *where* phrases:

Silvio: **Por favor, sabe onde passa o ônibus número sessenta e dois?** (poh fah-voh, sah-bee ohn-jee pah-sah ooh oh-nee-boos noo-meh-doh seh-sehn-tah ee doh-eez; Excuse me, do you know where bus number 62 passes?)

Passerby: **Para onde quer ir?** (pah-dah ohn-jee keh ee; Where would you like to go?)

Silvio: **Quero ir para Petrópolis.** (keh-doo ee pah-dah peh-tdoh-poh-leez; I want to go to Petropolis.)

Passerby: **Não conheço o sessenta e dois, mas o quarenta e três vai para Petrópolis.** (nah-ooh kohn-yeh-soo ooh seh-sehn-tah ee doh-eez, mah-eez ooh kwah-dehn-tah ee tdehz vah-ee pah-dah ooh peh-tdoh-poh-leez; I don't know the number 62, but the 43 goes to Petropolis.)

Silvio: **Sabe onde tem uma parada do quarenta e três?** (sah-bee ohn-jee tang ooh-mah pah-dah-dah doo kwah-dehn-tah ee tdehz?; Do you know where there's a bus stop for the 43?)

Passerby: **Tem uma do lado do Pão de Açúcar. Sabe onde é?** (tang ooh-mah doo lah-doo doo pah-ooh jee ah-soo-kah. sah-bee ohn-jee eh; There's one next to the Pão de Açúcar. Do you know where it is?)

Silvio: **Não, não sei.** (nah-ooh, nah-ooh say; No, I don't.)

Passerby: **Fica naquela esquina. Tá vendo?** (fee-kah nah-keh-lah eh-skee-nah. tah vehn-doh?; It's on that corner. Do you see it?)

Words to Know

passa	<u>pah</u> -sah	passes
ônibus	<u>oh</u> -nee-boos	bus
número	<u>noo</u> -meh-doh	number
conheço	kohn-yeh- <u>soh</u>	I know/I'm familiar with
vai	<u>vah</u> -ee	goes
parada	pah- <u>dah</u> -dah	bus stop
do lado	doo <u>lah</u> -doo	next to
naquela	nah- <u>keh</u> -lah	on that
esquina	eh- <u>skee</u> -nah	street corner
Tá vendo?	<u>tah</u> <u>vehn</u> -doh	Do you see it?

Understanding Spatial Directions

You can use the descriptions of space in Table 9-1 while asking for directions in a city, trying to **encontrar** (ehn-kohn-*tdah*; find) something in someone's **casa** (*kah-zah*; house), or even while taking an **axé** (ah-*sheh*; Brazilian-style aerobics) class.

Table 9-1 Words That Describe Locations

<i>Term</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
na frente	nah <i>fdehn</i> -chee	in front of
atrás	ah- <i>tdah</i> -eez	behind

(continued)

Table 9-1 (continued)

<i>Term</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
para a direita	<i>pah-dah ah jee-day-tah</i>	to the right
para a esquerda	<i>pah-dah ah ehs-keh-dah</i>	to the left
abaixo	<i>ah-bah-ee-shoh</i>	below/underneath
acima	<i>ah-see-mah</i>	above/on top of
do lado	<i>doo lah-doh</i>	next to
dentro	<i>dehn-tdoh</i>	inside
for a	<i>foh-dah</i>	outside

Here are some sentences that use directional words and phrases:

- ✓ **Fica na frente do Correio.** (*fee-kah nah fdehn-chee doo koh-hay-oh*; It's in front of the post office.)
- ✓ **Está atrás da mesa.** (*eh-stah ah-tdah-eez dah meh-zah*; It's behind the table.)
- ✓ **Vá para a direita.** (*vah pah-dah ah jee-day-tah*; Go to the right.)
- ✓ **Fica para a esquerda da loja.** (*fee-kah pah-dah ah ehs-keh-dah dah loh-zhah*; It's to the left of the store.)
- ✓ **Olhe embaixo.** (*ohl-yee em-bah-ee-shoh*; Look underneath.)
- ✓ **Estão em cima da geladeira.** (*eh-stah-ooh ah-see-mah dah zeh-lah-day-dah*; They're on top of the refrigerator.)
- ✓ **Está do lado da janela.** (*eh-stah doo lah-doh dah zhah-neh-lah*; It's next to the window.)

- ✓ **Está dentro da caixa.** (*eh-stah dehnt-droh dah kah-ee-shah*; It's inside the box.)
- ✓ **O carro está fora da garagem.** (*ooh kah-hoh eh-stah foh-dah dah gah-dah-zhang*; The car's outside of the garage.)

Straight ahead can be expressed a couple of ways: **direto** (*jee-deh-too*. *Literally*: direct) or **reto** (*heh-too*. *Literally*: straight). If you're driving, someone may tell you

- ✓ **Pode ir reto.** (*poh-jee ee heh-too*; You can go straight.)
- ✓ **Segue sempre direto.** (*seh-gee sehm-pdee jee-deh-too*; It's straight ahead, all the way. *Literally*: It's all straight.)

Navigating Cityscapes

Some Brazilian cities can be a challenge to figure out, but the following terms will help you get your bearings:

- ✓ **museu** (*moo-zeh-ooh*; museum)
- ✓ **galeria de arte** (*gah-leh-dee-ah jee ah-chee*; art gallery)
- ✓ **centro da cidade** (*sent-droh dah see-dah-jee*; city center)
- ✓ **bairro** (*bah-ee-hoo*; neighborhood)
- ✓ **centro histórico** (*sehn-tdoh ee-stoh-dee-koh*; historic center)
- ✓ **quartirão** (*kwah-tay-dah-oong*; block)
- ✓ **praça** (*pdah-sah*; plaza)
- ✓ **rua** (*hoo-ah*; street)
- ✓ **rio** (*hee-ooh*; river)
- ✓ **parque** (*pah-kee*; park)

- ✓ **centro comercial** (*sehn-tdoh koh-meh-see-ah-ooh*; shopping center)
- ✓ **jardim** (*zhah-jing*; garden)
- ✓ **mar** (*mah*; ocean)
- ✓ **beira-mar** (*bay-dah-mah*; shoreline/seafront)
- ✓ **morro** (*moh-hoo*; hill)
- ✓ **igreja** (*ee-gdeh-zhah*; church)
- ✓ **ponte** (*pohn-chee*; bridge)

Here are some words you can use to give directions:

- ✓ **vá** (*vah*; go)
- ✓ **cruza** (*kdoo-zah*; cross)
- ✓ **olha** (*ohl-yah*; look)
- ✓ **pega** (*peh-gah*; take)
- ✓ **segue** (*seh-gee*; follow)
- ✓ **sobe** (*soh-bee*; go up)
- ✓ **desce** (*deh-see*; go down)



To give directions, use the *command* or *imperative* verb form. In Portuguese, you can give commands to someone by using the **você** form of the verb. Simply use the *a* ending for **-ar** verbs or the *e* ending for **-er/-ir** verbs. The verb **ir** (*ee*; to go), however, is irregular; it takes the form **vá** (*vah*) for commands. Just like in English, the subject of the sentence (*you/você*) is implied, so you can start the sentence with the verb: **Cruza a ponte** (*kdoo-zah ah pohn-chee*; Cross the bridge).

Getting directions straight is hard enough in English — let alone in Portuguese! So here are sample sentences that put together some of the terms that have to do with location:

- ✓ **Está atrás da igreja.** (*eh-stah ah-tdah-eez dah ee-gdeh-zhah*; It's behind the church.)
- ✓ **Fica na beira-mar.** (*fee-kah nah bay-dah mah*; It's on the seafront.)
- ✓ **Olha para lá.** (*ohl-yah pah-dah lah*; Look over there.)
- ✓ **Pega a segunda à direita.** (*peh-gah ah seh-goondah ah jee-day-tah*; Take the second right.)
- ✓ **Segue essa rua direto.** (*seh-gee eh-sah hoo-ah jee-deh-toh*; Follow this road all the way.)

You may want to use some of these handy connector words, which help tell you when to do something:

- ✓ **quando** (*kwahn-doh*; when)
- ✓ **antes** (*ahn-cheez*; before)
- ✓ **depois** (*deh-poh-eez*; after)
- ✓ **logo** (*loh-goo*; as soon as)
- ✓ **até** (*ah-teh*; until)

Just for fun, here are some more-complicated sentences that show you how you can use those connector words:

- ✓ **Vá até a praça, e depois pega a Rua Almirantes.** (*vah ah-teh ah pdah-sah ee deh-poh-eez peh-gah ah hoo-ah ah-oooh-mee-dahn-cheez*; Go until you reach the plaza, and then take Almirantes Street.)
- ✓ **Sobe a Faria Lima, e depois pega a Bandeirantes quando chegar no posto de gasolina.** (*soh-bee ah fah-dee-ah lee-mah ee deh-poh-eez peh-gah ooh bahn-day-dahn-cheez kwahn-doh sheh-gah noo poh-stoo jee gah-zoh-lee-nah*; Go up Faria Lima, and then take Bandeirantes when you get to the gas station.)

Over Here, Over There

Take a look at how you can say *here*, *there*, and *over there*. You can use these words in so many settings — when you're asking for directions, browsing in a shop, or pointing out a person on the street. These terms help you distinguish the physical position of the item or person in relation to your location.

- ✓ **aqui** (ah-kee; here)
- ✓ **ali** (ah-lee; there)
- ✓ **lá** (lah; over there)

In general, **lá** is reserved for places that are a few minutes' walk away or more. If you're talking about an object upstairs, use **ali**. If you're talking about your car parked on the other side of town, use **lá**. Also use **lá** to talk about stuff happening really far away, like in other countries. Here are some examples:

- ✓ **Estamos aqui.** (eh-stah-mohz ah-kee; We're here.)
- ✓ **Está ali, na mesa.** (eh-stah ah-lee nah meh-zah; It's there, on the table.)
- ✓ **Lá nos Estados Unidos, se come muita fast food.** (lah nohz eh-stah-dohz ooh-nee-dooz, see koh-mee moh-ee-tah fast food; Over there in the United States, they eat a lot of fast food.) (**Note:** Brazilians say *fast food* in English.)
- ✓ **Vá lá.** (vah lah; Go over there.)

Say you're in a taxi. You've told the driver the street where you're going, but now you're on that street and want to say, "Let me off right here." Say **aqui-o!** (ah-kee-ah; Right here!) to sound like a native Brazilian.

The one time you won't use **aqui** when you mean *here* is with the expression *Come here*, where **cá** replaces **aqui**: **Vem cá!** (vang kah; Come here!), a mother says to her child.

How Far? *Perto ou longe?*

One question you may want to ask before hearing a complicated set of directions is **Fica longe?** (*fee-kah lohn-zhee*; Is it far?). Here are some handy words you can use for estimating distances:

- ✓ **longe** (*lohn-zhee*; far)
- ✓ **perto** (*peh-too*; close)
- ✓ **muito longe** (*moh-ee-toh lohn-zhee*; really far)
- ✓ **muito perto** (*moh-ee-toh peh-too*; really close)
- ✓ **pertinho** (*peh-cheen-yoh*; really close)

Practice near and far with the following conversation:

Taís: **Por favor, qual fica mais perto, o shopping ou a praia?** (*poh fah-voh, kwah-oooh fee-kah mah-eez peh-too, ooh shoh-ping ooh ah pdah-ee-ah*; Excuse me, which is closer, the shopping mall or the beach?)

Concierge: **A praia é bem mais perto. Fica aqui do lado.** (*ah pdah-ee-ah eh bang mah-eez peh-too. fee-kah ah-kee doo lah-doo*; The beach is much closer. It's just on the other side of here.)

Taís: **E o shopping? Como se chega?** (*ee ooh shoh-ping? koh-moh see sheh-gah?*; And the mall? How do you get there?)

Concierge: **Olha, tem que pegar dois ônibus, ou pode ir de táxi.** (*ohl-yah, tang kee peh-gah doh-eez oh-nee-boos, oh poh-jee eeh jee tahk-see*; Well, you have to take two buses, or you can take a taxi.)

Taís: **Tudo bem. O shopping para ir hoje parece longe demais.** (*too-doh bang. ooh shoh-ping pah-dah eeh oh-zhee pah-deh-see lohn-zhee jee-mah-eez*; All right. The mall seems too far away to go to today.)

Concierge: **Melhor ficar tranqüila na praia.** (*mel-yoh fee-kah tdahn-kwee-lah nah pdah-ee-ah*; It's better to relax on the beach.)

Words to Know

mais perto	<u>mah</u> -eez <u>peh</u> -too	closer
bem mais perto	<u>bang</u> <u>mah</u> -eez <u>peh</u> - too	a lot closer
tem que pegar . . .	<u>tang</u> kee <u>peh-gah</u>	you have to take . . .
pode	<u>poh</u> -jee	you can
ir de táxi	<u>eeh</u> jee <u>tahk</u> -see	go by taxi
parece	<u>pah-deh</u> -see	it seems
longe demais	<u>lohn</u> -zhee jee <u>mah</u> -eez	too far
ficar tranquila	fee- <u>kah</u> tdahn- <u>kwee</u> -lah	to relax

Chapter 10

Finding a Place to Lay Your Weary Head

In This Chapter

- ▶ Finding a home
- ▶ Scoping out a hotel
- ▶ Talking about sleep

Whether you've been working at the office or out shopping and seeing the sights, you need a place to lay your head. This chapter gives you the phrases you need to find a house or a hotel.

Finding a Place to Live

Most Brazilians in cities live in apartments, and most Brazilians in rural areas live in houses — like most people in the world. If you're staying in Brazil for a while and need to rent a place to stay, you may find that renting an apartment in Brazil is a little different from renting an apartment in the United States.

Here are some questions you may want to ask the landlord of an apartment you're interested in:

- ✓ **Fica em qual andar?** (*fee-kah ang kwah-oooh ahn-dah*; What floor is it on?)
- ✓ **Que tipo de vista tem?** (*kee chee-poh jee vee-stah tang*; What type of a view does it have?)

- ✓ **Quanto é o aluguel?** (*kwahn-toh eh ooh ah-loo-geh-ooh*; How much is the rent?)
- ✓ **Tem ar condicionado?** (*tang ah kohn-dee-see-ooh-nah-doo*; Does it have air-conditioning?)
- ✓ **Quantos metros quadrados?** (*kwahn-tohs meht-dohs kwah-drah-dohs*; How many square meters?)
- ✓ **Vem incluída a luz?** (*vang een-kloo-ee-dah ah looz*; Is electricity included?)
- ✓ **Tem estacionamento?** (*tang eh-stah-see-oh-nah-mehn-toh*; Does it have a parking spot?)

Take a look at Table 10-1 for some basic words that you may want to use when you discuss accommodations or start to furnish your apartment:

Table 10-1 Living-Space Words		
<i>Term</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
casa	<i>kah-zah</i>	house
apartamento	<i>ah-pah-tah-mehn-toh</i>	apartment
porta	<i>poh-tah</i>	door
quarto	<i>kwah-toh</i>	room
banheiro	<i>bahn-yay-doh</i>	bathroom
terraço	<i>teh-hah-soh</i>	balcony
jardim	<i>zhah-jing</i>	garden
piscina	<i>pee-see-nah</i>	pool
cozinha	<i>koh-zing-yah</i>	kitchen
luz	<i>looz</i>	light
janela	<i>zhah-neh-lah</i>	window
geladeira	<i>zheh-lah-day-dah</i>	refrigerator
fogão	<i>foh-gah-ooh</i>	stove

<i>Term</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
mesa	<i>meh-zah</i>	table
cadeira	<i>kah-day-dah</i>	chair
sofá	<i>soh-fah</i>	sofa
cama	<i>koo-mah</i>	bed
travesseiro	<i>tdah-veh-say-dah</i>	pillow
lençóis	<i>lehn-soh-eez</i>	sheets
escrivania	<i>ehs-kdee-vah-nee-ah</i>	desk
televisão	<i>teh-leh-vee-zah-oooh</i>	television



Brazilians call the first floor of a building the **térreo** (*teh-hee-oh*; ground), and what people call in English the second floor, they call the **primeiro andar** (*pdee-may-doh ahn-dah*; first floor). A tad confusing at first, but fairly easy to get used to!

Checking Out the Hotel or Pousada

In Brazil, there are two main types of **hospedagem** (*oh-speh-dah-zhang*; lodging). **Hotéis** (*oh-tay-eez*; hotels) are very large and may have lots of amenities, and **pousadas** (*poh-zah-dahz*; guesthouses) are small and friendly.

Deciding where to stay

Before you decide where to stay, you want to **revisar** (*heh-vee-zah*; check out) the **quartos** (*kwah-too-z*; rooms) and the place in general, **dentro** (*dehn-tdoh*; inside) and **fora** (*foh-dah*; outside). You'll want to ask some **perguntas** (*peh-gooh-tahz*; questions), too.

Hotels are a great place to use the expression

Tem . . . ? (tang; Does it have/Do you have . . . ?).

Here are some **perguntas** you can use to ask about **o quarto**:

- ✓ **Tem água quente?** (tang ah-gwah kang-chee; Does it have hot water?)
- ✓ **Tem banheira?** (tang bahn-yay-dah; Does it have a bathtub?)
- ✓ **Tem ar condicionado?** (tang ah kohn-dee-see-ooh-nah-doo; Does it have air-conditioning?)
- ✓ **Tem ventilador?** (tang vehn-chee-lah-doh; Does it have a fan?)
- ✓ **Tem cofre?** (tang koh-fdee; Does it have a safe deposit box?)
- ✓ **Tem vista?** (tang vee-stah; Does it have a view?)
- ✓ **Tem acesso à Internet?** (tang ahk-seh-soo ah een-teh-neh-chee; Does it have Internet access?)
- ✓ **Tem TV a cabo?** (tang teh-veh ah kah-boh; Does it have cable TV?)
- ✓ **Tem Jacuzzi?** (tang zhah-koo-zee; Does it have a Jacuzzi?)

And here's what you can ask about the **hotel** (oh-tay-ooh; hotel) or **pousada** (poh-zah-dah; guesthouse) in general:

- ✓ **Tem café incluído?** (vang een-kloo-ee-doh ooh kah-feh; Is breakfast included?)
- ✓ **Tem piscina?** (tang pee-see-nah; Do you have a pool?)
- ✓ **Tem quarto para não fumantes?** (tang kwah-toh pah-dah nah-ooh foo-mahn-cheez; Do you have nonsmoking rooms?)
- ✓ **Tem academia?** (tang ah-kah-deh-mee-ah; Do you have a gym?)

This phrase doesn't use **tem**, but you can use it to ask about one of the hotel services: **Oferecem transporte**

do aeroporto? (oh-feh-deh-sehn tdahn-spoh-chee doo ah-eh-doh-poh-too; Do you offer a pickup service from the airport?).

Making reservations

You can use the preceding questions and phrases about **hospedagem** (oh-speh-dah-zhang; accommodations) either on the phone, when you're making a **reserva** (heh-seh-vah; reservation), or in person, at the **recepção do hotel** (heh-sep-sah-oooh doo oh-teh-oooh; hotel reception desk). (For more on talking on the phone, see Chapter 8.)

If you can do so, trying to **fazer uma reserva** (fah-zeh ooh-mah heh-seh-vah; make a reservation) before you **chegar** (sheh-gah; arrive) is always a good idea. The most important question, of course, is whether the place has a **vaga** (vah-gah; vacancy). Here are some helpful phrases:

- ✓ **Tem vaga para hoje à noite?** (tang vah-gah pah-dah oh-zhee ah noh-ee-chee; Do you have a vacancy for tonight?)
- ✓ **Tem vaga para o fim de semana?** (tang vah-gah pah-dah ooh fing jee seh-mah-nah; Do you have a vacancy for the weekend?)
- ✓ **Tem vaga para o mês que vem?** (tang vah-gah pah-dah ooh mehz kee vang; Do you have a vacancy for next month?)
- ✓ **Eu quero fazer uma reserva.** (eh-oooh kee-dee-ah fah-zeh ooh-mah heh-seh-vah; I want to make a reservation.)
- ✓ **É para duas pessoas.** (eh pah-dah doo-ahz peh-soh-ahz; It's for two people.)
- ✓ **Só para uma pessoa.** (soh pah-dah ooh-mah peh-soh-ah; Just for one person.)

The hotel clerk may ask or tell you:

- ✓ **Quantas pessoas?** (kwahn-tahz peh-soh-ahz; How many people?)

- ✓ **Por quantas noites?** (poh kwahn-tahz noh-ee-cheez; For how many nights?)
- ✓ **Cama de casal, ou duas camas de solteiro?** (kah-mah jee kah-zah-oooh, ooh doo-ahz kah-mahz jee soh-oooh-tay-doh; A double bed, or two twin beds?)

Checking in and checking out: Registration procedures

Funnily enough, most Brazilians refer to *the check-in process* as **o check-in** (ooh sheh-king). **Fazer o check-in** (fah-zeh ooh sheh-king) means “to check in.”

Checking into a **hotel** (oh-tay-oooh; hotel) or **pousada** (poh-zah-dah; guesthouse) in Brazil is the same process as you’d see in most places around the world. First, you give the desk clerk your **nome** (noh-mee; name). If you have a **reserva** (heh-seh-vah; reservation), the clerk will probably check the **detalhes** (deh-tah-leez; details) on file for you and then give you the **chaves** (shah-veez; keys) to the room. On the way to your **quarto** (kwah-too; room), a hotel worker will probably point out important places in the **prédio** (pdehj-ee-yoo; building), like where you’ll be eating **café da manhã** (kah-feh dah mahn-yah; breakfast) and where the **academia** (ah-kah-deh-mee-ah; gym) and **piscina** (pee-see-nah; pool) are, if it’s a large hotel.

By federal law, every **hotel** and **pousada** has to give every **hóspede** (oh-speh-jee; guest) a **ficha** (fee-shah; form) to fill out, which asks you to write down basic I.D. information, as well as which places you’ve visited in Brazil so far and which places you’re headed to. This **ficha** helps **Embratur** (em-bdah-too; the federal tourism board) understand the activity of its tourists. The **ficha** uses the following terms:

- ✓ **nome** (noh-mee; first name)
- ✓ **sobrenome** (soh-bdee noh-mee; last name/surname)
- ✓ **país de origem** (pah-eez jee oh-dee-zhang; country of origin)

- ✓ **data** (*dah-tah*; date)
- ✓ **próximo destino** (*pdoh-see-moh dehs-chee-noo*; next destination)
- ✓ **número de passaporte** (*noo-meh-doh jee pah-sah-poh-chee*; passport number)

The following are some phrases that the hotel clerk may use:

- ✓ **Aqui tem duas chaves.** (*ah-kee tang doo-ahz shah-veez*; Here are two keys.)
- ✓ **Preencha essa ficha, por favor.** (*pdehn-sha eh-sah fee-shah poh fah-voh*; Fill out this form, please.)

Talking about Sleep

Whether you're going home after a long day at work or after sightseeing 'til you're ready to drop, the following phrases show you how to say how tired you are or to talk about sleep in general:

- ✓ **Dormiu bem?** (*doh-mee-oooh bang*; Did you sleep well?)
- ✓ **Dormi muito mal.** (*doh-mee moh-ee-toh mah-oooh*; I slept really poorly.)
- ✓ **Dormi como uma pedra.** (*doh-mee koh-moo ooh-mah ped-rah*; I slept like a rock — Brazilian for *I slept like a log*.)
- ✓ **Dormimos só quatro horas.** (*doo-mee-mooz soh kwah-tdoh oh-dahz*; We slept only four hours.)
- ✓ **Eu preciso dormir oito horas.** (*eh-oooh pdehn-see-zoo doo-mee oh-ee-toh oh-dahz*; I need to sleep eight hours.)
- ✓ **Os gatos dormem no meu quarto.** (*ooz gah-tohz doo-mang noh meh-oooh kwah-too*; The cats sleep in my room.)
- ✓ **Adoro dormir na praia.** (*ah-doh-doo doh-mee nah pdah-ee-ah*; I love sleeping on the beach.)

- ✓ **Vou dormir. Boa noite.** (*voh doo-mee. boh-ah noh-ee-chee*; I'm going to bed. Good night.)
- ✓ **Você deveria ir dormir cedo hoje.** (*voh-seh deh-veh-dee-ah ee doo-mee seh-doo oh-zhee*; You should go to sleep early today.)
- ✓ **Não funciona se durmo menos de cinco horas.** (*nah-oooh foon-see-oh-noo see doo-moh meh-nohz jee seen-koh oh-dahz*; I can't function if I sleep less than five hours.)

A useful sleep-related phrase is **estar com sono** (*eh-stah kohng soh-noo*; to be sleepy):

- ✓ **Está com sono?** (*eh-stah kohng soh-noo*; Are you sleepy?)
- ✓ **Estou com sono.** (*eh-stoh kohng soh-noo*; I'm sleepy.)

Hopefully, you'll never have **pesadelos** (*peh-zah-deh-looz*; nightmares) — only **sonhos doces** (*sohn-yooz doh-seez*; sweet dreams)!

Acorda! (*ah-koh-dah*; Wake up!) is what a Brazilian may say if you haven't set your **despertador** (*deh-speh-tah-doh*; alarm clock) properly. Here are some other phrases related to waking up:

- ✓ **Acordei cedo.** (*ah-koh-day seh-doh*; I woke up early.)
- ✓ **Acordei tarde.** (*ah-koh-day tah-jee*; I woke up late.)
- ✓ **Poderia me acordar às oito horas?** (*poh-deh-dee-ah mee ah-koh-dah ahz oh-ee-toh oh-dahz*; Could you wake me up at 8 o'clock?)
- ✓ **A que horas tem que acordar amanhã?** (*ah kee oh-dahz tang kee ah-koh-dah ah-mahn-yah*?; What time do you have to wake up tomorrow?)

Words to Know

A que horas . . . ?	ah kee oh-dahz	At what time . . . ?
tem que acordar	<u>tan</u> g kee ah-koh- <u>da</u> h	you have to wake up
. . . hein?	ang	. . . right?
você deveria	voh- <u>seh</u> deh-veh- <u>dee</u> -ah	you should
ir dormir	<u>ee</u> h doh- <u>me</u> e	to go to sleep
cedo	<u>seh</u> -doo	early
menos de	<u>meh</u> -nohz <u>jee</u>	less than

Chapter 11

Dealing with Emergencies

In This Chapter

- ▶ Shouting for help after a robbery or other incident
 - ▶ Preventing illness and getting medical help
 - ▶ Talking about legal problems
-

Emergencies can happen anywhere, and you can handle them best if you're prepared. This chapter tells you how to deal with life's unexpected adventures.

Here are some basic emergency terms to start you out:

- ✓ **Cuidado!** (*kwee-dah-doh*; Watch out!)
- ✓ **Rápido!** (*hah-pee-doh*; Quick!)
- ✓ **Vamos!** (*vah-mooz*; Let's go!)
- ✓ **Me ayuda!** (*mee ah-zhoo-dah*; Help me!)
- ✓ **Fogo!** (*foh-goo*; Fire!)

Stick 'em Up: What to Say If You're Robbed

So what should you do if you're being robbed? The local refrain is **Não reaja** (*nah-oooh hee-ah-zhah*; Don't react). That means: Don't shout, don't try to get away, don't punch the **ladrão** (*lah-drah-oooh*; robber/pickpocket).

Saying nothing during a robbery is generally best, but here are some classic phrases you may want to know:

- ✓ **Não tenho dinheiro.** (*nah-oooh tang-yoh jing-yay-doh*; I don't have any money.)
- ✓ **Não tenho nada.** (*nah-oooh tang-yoh nah-dah*; I don't have anything.)
- ✓ **Socorro!** (*soh-koh-hoo*; Help!)
- ✓ **É ladrão!** (*eh lah-drah-oooh*; He's a robber/pickpocket!)

Of course, you want to try to avoid having any problems in Brazil. Besides taking the same safety precautions you'd take back at home, it's always a good idea to ask locals whether a certain area is safe:

- ✓ **Esta região é segura?** (*eh-stah heh-zhee-ah-oooh eh seh-goo-dah*; Is this area safe?)
- ✓ **Quais os bairros que são perigosos?** (*kwah-eez ooohz bah-ee-hooz kee sah-oooh peh-dee-goh-zooz*; Which neighborhoods are dangerous?)

Asking for and receiving help

Say you've just been robbed. You had only a little money on you, and the robber didn't get anything else. You now need to get back home or to your hotel.

For this situation, or any other time you need help for something that's not a major emergency, you can use these phrases:

- ✓ **Por favor, poderia me ajudar?** (poh fah-voh poh-deh-dee-ah mee ah-zhoo-dah; Excuse me, could you help me?)
- ✓ **Eu preciso de ajuda, por favor.** (eh-oooh pdeh-see-zoo jee ah-zhoo-dah, poh fah-voh; I need help, please.)
- ✓ **Por favor, posso usar o seu telefone?** (poh fah-voh, poh-soh ooh-zah ooh seh-oooh teh-leh-foh-nee?; Excuse me, could I use your phone?)
- ✓ **Preciso ligar para o consulado.** (pdeh-see-zoo lee-gah pah-dah ooh kohn-soo-lah-doo; I need to call the consulate.)
- ✓ **Tem o número da polícia local?** (tang ooh noo-meh-doh dah poh-lee-see-ah loh-kah-oooh?; Do you have the number for the local police?)

Conversely, what can you say if Brazilians offer you **ajuda** (ah-zhoo-dah; help)? Try these responses:

- ✓ **Obrigado/a, sim, eu preciso de ajuda.** (oh-bdee-gah-doh/dah sing eh-oooh pdeh-see-zoo jee ah-zhoo-dah; Thanks, yes, I need help.)
- ✓ **Estou bem, obrigado/a.** (eh-stoh bang, oh-bdee-gah-doh/dah; I'm fine, thanks.)
- ✓ **Não preciso de ajuda.** (nah-oooh pdeh-see-zoo jee ah-zhoo-dah; I don't need any help.)
- ✓ **Eu prefiro ficar sozinho/a.** (eh-oooh pdeh-fee-doo fee-kah soh-zeen-yoh/yah; I prefer to be alone.)

Words to Know

seqüestros	seh-kweh-stdros	lightning-
relâmpagos	heh-lahm-pah-gohz	speed
		kidnappings

continued

Words to Know (continued)

ladrão	lah- <u>drah</u> -ooh	robber/ pickpocket
carteira	kah- <u>tay</u> -dah	wallet
relógio	heh- <u>loh</u> -zhee-ooh	watch
bolsa	<u>boh</u> -ooh-sah	purse
ligar para	lee- <u>gah</u> pah-dah	to call
consulado	kohn-soo- <u>lah</u> -doh	consulate
número	<u>noo</u> -meh-doh	phone number
polícia local	poh- <u>lee</u> -see-ah loh <u>kah</u> -ooh	local police
delegacia	deh-leh-gah- <u>see</u> -ah	police station

Reporting a problem to the police

Most Brazilians will tell you they fear a **polícia** (ah poh-*lee*-see-ah; the police) more than they trust them. Police officers are generally fine with tourists, though, and they're good for filing insurance forms if you get robbed — especially in Rio, a city economically tied to its tourism trade.

Here's what you can tell the **polícia** if you want to report a robbery:

- ✓ **Fui roubado/a.** (*fwee* hoh-bah-doh/dah; I've been robbed.)
- ✓ **Eu preciso fazer um boletim de ocorrência.** (*eh*-ooh pdeh-see-zoo fah-zeh oong boh-leh-ching jee oh-koh-hen-see-ah; I need to report a robbery.)

- ✓ **É para a minha companhia de seguros.** (*eh pah-dah ah ming-yah kom-pahn-yee-ah jee seh-goo-dohz*; It's for my insurance company.)

The **polícia** may ask you some of the following questions:

- ✓ **Quando aconteceu?** (*kwahn-doh ah-kohn-teh-seh-oooh*; When did it happen?)
- ✓ **Onde aconteceu?** (*ah-ohn-jee ah-kohn-teh-seh-oooh*; Where did it happen?)
- ✓ **O que que foi roubado?** (*ooh kee kee foh-ee hoh-bah-doh*; What was stolen?)
- ✓ **Viu o assaltante?** (*vee-oooh ooh ah-sah-oooh-tahn-chee*; Did you see the assailant?)
- ✓ **Usou uma arma?** (*ooh-zoh ooh-mah ah-mah*; Did he use a weapon?)

Of course, the **polícia** will probably ask you the regular questions outlined in earlier chapters, like **Qual é seu nome?** (*kwah-oooh eh seh-oooh noh-mee*; What's your name?) and **Você é de que país?** (*voh-seh eh jee kee pah-eez*; What country are you from?). (See Chapter 4.)



Although **Socorro!** (*soh-koh-hoo*) means “Help!” Brazilians don’t use the verb **socorrer** much. You can also shout **Ajuda!** if you’re in trouble, though **Socorro!** is the classic plea for help.

Handling Health Emergencies

Having to get medical treatment in another country can be scary, and it’s never fun. Knowing a few phrases that can help you communicate is bound to calm you down a bit!

Getting sick

Here are some helpful phrases to use, whether you're at the **médico** (*meh-jee-koo*; doctor) or the **farmácia** (*fah-mah-see-ah*; drugstore):

- ✓ **Estou com dor de cabeça.** (*eh-stoh koh-oong doh jee kah-beh-sah*; I have a headache.)
- ✓ **Estou com muita dor.** (*eh-stoh koh-oong moh-ee-tah doh*; I'm in a lot of pain.)
- ✓ **Tenho dores no corpo.** (*tang-yoh doh-deez noh koh-poo*; I have body aches.)
- ✓ **Tenho tosse.** (*tang-yoh toh-see*; I have a cough.)
- ✓ **Sou diabético.** (*soh jee-ah-beh-chee-koh*; I'm diabetic.)
- ✓ **Tenho asma.** (*tang-yoh ahz-mah*; I have asthma.)
- ✓ **Tem band-aids?** (*tang bahn-day-ee-jeez*; Do you have Band-Aids?)
- ✓ **Tem aspirina?** (*tang ah-spee-dee-nah*; Do you have aspirin?)
- ✓ **Tem algo para diarreia?** (*tang ah-ooh-goh pah-dah jee-ah-hay-ah*; Do you have something for diarrhea?)

Other ailments include

- ✓ **resfriado** (*hehs-fdee-ah-doo*; cold)
- ✓ **dor** (*doh*; pain)
- ✓ **ressaca** (*heh-sah-kah*; hangover)
- ✓ **a malária** (*ah mah-lah-dee-ah*; malaria)
- ✓ **a dengue** (*ah dehn-gee*; dengue fever)
- ✓ **a gripe** (*ah gdee-pee*; the flu)

Here are some questions the pharmacist or doctor may ask you:

- ✓ **Dói?** (*doh-ee*; Does it hurt?)
- ✓ **Onde dói?** (*ohn-jee doh-ee*; Where does it hurt?)
- ✓ **Tem febre?** (*tang feh-bdee*; Do you have a fever?)

- ✓ **Tem náuseas?** (*tang nah-oooh-zee-ahz*; Are you nauseous?)
- ✓ **É alérgico?** (*eh ah-leh-zhee-koh*; Are you allergic?)
- ✓ **Tem alta pressão sanguínea?** (*tang ah-oooh-tah pdeh-sah-oooh sahn-gee-neh-ah*; Do you have high blood pressure?)
- ✓ **Já foi operado?** (*zhah foh-ee oh-peh-dah-doh*; Have you ever had surgery?)
- ✓ **Abre a boca, por favor.** (*ah-bdee ah boh-kah, poh fah-voh*; Open your mouth, please.)
- ✓ **Tome esses comprimidos.** (*toh-mee eh-seez kohm-pdee-mee-dooz*; Take these pills.)

Here's an example of a conversation you might have at a pharmacy:

Mauricio: **Por favor, estou com o olho inchado.** (*poh fah-voh, eh-stoh koh-oong ooh ohl-yoh een-shah-doo*; Excuse me, I have a swollen eye.)

Pharmacist: **Sabe por que está inchado?** (*sah-bee poh keh eh-stah een-shah-doo*?; Do you know why it's swollen?)

Mauricio: **Não. Acordei hoje e já estava assim.** (*nah-oooh. ah-koh-day oh-zhee ee zhah eh-stah-vah ah-sing*; No. I woke up this morning and it was already like that.)

Pharmacist: **Não parece muito grave.** (*nah-oooh pah-deh-see moh-ee-toh gdah-vee*; It doesn't look very serious.)

Mauricio: **O que recomenda fazer?** (*ooh kee heh-koh-men-dah fah-zeh*?; What do you recommend I do?)

Pharmacist: **Eu recomendo você colocar um saquinho de gelo em cima.** (*eh-oooh heh-koh-mehn-doo voh-seh koh-loh-kah oong sah-king-yoh jee zheh-loh ang see-mah*; I recommend that you put a little bag of ice on it.)

Mauricio: **Mas é normal o olho inchar, sem fazer nada?** (*mah-eez eh noh-mah-ooh ooh ohl-yoh een-shah, sang fah-zeh nah-dah?*; But is it normal for an eye to swell, without doing anything?)

Pharmacist: **Poderia ser uma picada de inseto.** (*poh-deh-dee-ah seh ooh-mah pee-kah-dah jee een-seh-toh*; It could be an insect bite.)

Words to Know

olho inchado	<u>ohl</u> -yoh een- <u>shah</u> -doo	swollen eye
Sabe . . . ?	<u>sah</u> -bee	Do you know . . . ?
já	zhah	already
assim	ah- <u>sing</u>	like that
grave	<u>gdah</u> -vee	serious
colocar	koh-loh- <u>kah</u>	to put
saquinho	sah- <u>king</u> -yoh	little bag
gelo	<u>zheh</u> -loh	ice
inchar	een- <u>shah</u>	to swell
sem	sang	without
Poderia ser . . .	poh-deh- <u>dee</u> -ah <u>seh</u> . . .	It could be
picada	pee- <u>kah</u> -dah	bite
inseto	een- <u>seh</u> -too	insect

Handling broken bones and other injuries

Whether you have a stomach virus or a broken leg, knowing what certain parts of the body are called in Portuguese is useful so you can more easily communicate with doctors in Brazil. I start with **a cabeça** (ah kah-beh-sah; the head) and work my way down **o corpo** (ooh koh-poo; the body):

- ✓ **olho** (ohl-yoh; eye)
- ✓ **boca** (boh-kah; mouth)
- ✓ **língua** (ling-gwah; tongue)
- ✓ **orelha** (oh-deh-ooh-yah; ear)
- ✓ **nariz** (nah-deez; nose)
- ✓ **rosto** (hoh-stoo; face)
- ✓ **dentes** (dang-cheez; teeth)
- ✓ **sobrancelhas** (soh-bdan-sel-yahz; eyebrows)
- ✓ **pescoço** (peh-skoh-soo; neck)
- ✓ **costas** (koh-stahz; back)
- ✓ **peito** (pay-too; chest)
- ✓ **braços** (bdah-sooz; arms)
- ✓ **dedos** (deh-dooz; fingers)
- ✓ **bumbum** (boong-boong; bottom)
- ✓ **barriga** (bah-hee-gah; belly)
- ✓ **pernas** (peh-nahz; legs)
- ✓ **joelhos** (zhoh-el-yoh; knees)
- ✓ **pés** (pez; feet)
- ✓ **dedos do pé** (deh-dooz doo peh; toes)

And here are the names of some internal organs and useful medical terms:

- ✓ **coração** (koh-dah-sah-ooh; heart)
- ✓ **pulmões** (pool-moh-eez; lungs)
- ✓ **intestinos** (een-tehs-chee-nooz; intestines)

- ✓ **figado** (*fee-gah-doo*; liver)
- ✓ **sangue** (*sahn-gee*; blood)
- ✓ **cirurgia** (*see-doo-zhee-ah*; surgery)

Here's a conversation you might have with a doctor after breaking a leg:

Doctor: **Tem dores na perna?** (*tang doh-deez nah peh-nah?*; Your leg hurts?)

João: **Sim, dói muito.** (*sing, doh-ee moh-ee-toh*; Yes, it hurts a lot.)

Doctor: **Vamos fazer uma radiografia.** (*vah-mohz fah-zeh ooh-mah hah-jee-ooh-gdah-fee-ah*; We're going to take an X-ray.)

João: **Acha que está quebrado?** (*ah-shah kee eh-stah keh-bdah-doo?*; Do you think it's broken?)

Doctor: **Não sei ainda.** (*nah-ooh say ah-een-dah*; I don't know yet.)

João: **Vai ter que dar anestesia?** (*vah-ee teh kee dah ah-neh-steh-zee-ah?*; Are you going to have to give me anesthesia?)

Doctor: **Não, não é preciso.** (*nah-ooh, nah-ooh eh pdeh-see-zoo*; No, that's not necessary.)

Words to Know

sala de emergência	<u>sah</u> -lah jee eh- meh- <u>zhahng</u> -see- ah	emergency room
ambulância	ahm-boo- <u>lahn</u> - see-ah	ambulance
hospitais	oh-spee- <u>tah</u> -eez	hospitals
uma radiografia	ooh-mah hah- jee-ooh-gdah- <u>fee</u> -ah	X-ray

quebrada	keh- <u>bdah</u> -dah	broken
ainda	ah- <u>een</u> -dah	yet/still
Vai ter que . . . ?	<u>vah</u> -ee <u>teh</u> kee	Will you have to . . . ?
dar	dah	to give
anestesia	ah-neh-steh- <u>zee</u> -ah	anesthesia

Discussing Legal Problems

Misunderstandings with the police can occur. If the situation is at all **sério** (*seh-dee-ooh*; serious), the first thing to do is contact the nearest consulate for your country. You may also need to contact an **advogado** (*ahj-voh-gah-doo*; lawyer). In that case, ask for one who speaks English:

- ✓ **Tem um advogado que fala inglês?** (*tang oong ahj-voh-gah-doh kee fah-lah een-gleh*; Is there a lawyer who speaks English?)
- ✓ **Tem um consulado americano aqui?** (*tang oong kohn-soo-lah-doh ah-meh-dee-kah-noh ah-kee*; Is there an American consulate here?)

With any luck, you won't ever have to say or hear these phrases:

- ✓ **Quero fazer uma queixa.** (*keh-doo fah-zeh ooh-mah kay-shah*; I want to register a complaint.)
- ✓ **Vamos ter que dar uma multa.** (*vah-mohz teh kee dah ooh-mah mool-tah*; We're going to have to give you a ticket.)

- ✓ **Vamos te levar para a delegacia de polícia.**
(*vah-mohz chee leh-vah pah-dah ah deh-leh-gah-see-ah jee poh-lee-see-ah*; We're going to take you to the police station.)

You want to **evitar** (*eh-vee-tah*; avoid) a visit to a **cadeia** (*ah kah-day-ah*; jail) at all costs — jails in Brazil are notoriously overcrowded, scary places.

Chapter 12

Ten Favorite Brazilian Portuguese Expressions

.....

Brazilian Portuguese is a fun language. It's humorous and full of spice and emotion. Think of these phrases as clues to Brazilian culture. They start to paint a picture of a nation full of lively, friendly, and laid-back people.

Que saudade!

The word **saudade** (sah-oooh-dah-jee) has no direct translation in English, and it's a major source of linguistic pride for Brazilians. Use **Que saudade!** (kee sah-oooh-dah-jee) when you miss something so desperately, you have a heartache over it. People say **Que saudade!** when they remember their best friend who's now living far away, or their childhood beach.

Fala sério!

Say **Fala sério** (fah-lah seh-dee-oh) to mean "You're kidding!" or "You're joking!" or "No way!" Brazilians also say **Não acredito!** (nah-oooh ah-kdeh-jee-toh; I can't believe it!) in the same situations. But **Fala sério** has a funnier tone to it. It literally means, "Talk seriously."

. . . *pra caramba!*

Here's a great way to emphasize how off-the-charts something is. **Pra caramba** (pdah kah-dahm-bah) is most often used at the end of a sentence to exaggerate something. Use this phrase instead of putting **muito** (moh-ee-toh; very) or **bem** (bang; very) in front of these same words.

Take the classic phrase **É boa pra caramba** (eh boh-ah pdah kah-dahm-bah). **Boa** by itself means "good." When **pra caramba** comes after *good*, it transforms *It's good* to *It's amazing*.

Engraçado means "funny." **Engraçado pra caramba** (ang-gdah-sah-doo pdah kah-dahm-bah) means "hilarious." **Muito frio** means "very cold." So how cold was it? **Frio pra caramba!** (fdee-oh pdah kah-dahm-bah; Really, really cold!).

Lindo maravilhoso!

Lindo maravilhoso! (leen-doh mah-dah-veel-yoh-zoo) is a very Brazilian saying that literally translates to "Beautiful, marvelous!" Brazilians like to gush about beauty and how amazing things are.

The weather can be **lindo maravilhoso!** — **Hoje estava um dia lindo maravilhoso!** (oh-zhee eh-stah-vah oong jee-ah leen-doh mah-dah-veel-yoh-zoo; Today the weather was fantastic!). A place can be **lindo maravilhoso!** — **O local é lindo maravilhoso!** (ooh loh-kah-oooh eh leen-doh mah-dah-veel-yoh-zoo; The place is amazing!). If you admire someone's work, that can be **lindo maravilhoso!**, too.

And try to remember to use an *a* at the end of each word instead of the *o* if the word you're talking about

is feminine. A gorgeous woman is **linda maravilhosa!**
And a handsome man is **lindo maravilhoso!**

É mesmo?

É mesmo? (eh *mehz-moh*) means “Really?” It’s usually used to react to some interesting new fact.

You tell someone: Did you know that Portuguese is the fifth most-spoken language in the world? She answers back: **É mesmo?**

You tell someone that you’re learning Portuguese. What does she answer back? Sometimes it’s an enthusiastic **É mesmo!** (Really!).

Um beijo! or Um abraço!

Brazilians are very affectionate people. They often end a conversation with a friend or acquaintance they feel friendly toward by saying **Um beijo!** (oong *bay-zhoh*; a kiss) or **Um abraço!** (oong *ah-bdah-soh*; a hug). In general, women use **Um beijo!** to male and female friends, and men use **Um beijo!** to women and **Um abraço!** to male friends. These expressions are also common ways to end e-mails.

Imagina!

Brazilians are also very hospitable. After telling you “thank you” — **obrigado** (oh-bdee-gah-doh) if you’re male and **obrigada** (oh-bdee-gah-dah) if you’re female — a Brazilian often says **Imagina!** (mah-zhee-nah; *Literally*: Imagine!) to mean “It’s no trouble at all!” The initial *i* is chopped off in spoken language. It sounds like **Magina!**

Pois não?

Here's a common phrase you may hear when you enter a shop or call a service-oriented company over the phone, like a restaurant. **Pois não?** (*poh-eez nah-oo*) means "Can I help you?" It's a funny phrase, because it literally means "Because no?" It's pretty nonsensical, and Brazilians have a hard time saying where the phrase originated.

Com certeza!

This is another fun, common phrase. **Com certeza!** (*koh-oong seh-teh-zah*; *Literally*: With certainty!) translates to "Of course!" or "Definitely!"

If someone asks you **Vai para a festa?** (*vah-ee pah-dah ah feh-s-tah*; Are you going to the party?), you can answer **Com certeza!**

Fique tranqüilo

If Brazilians value any single trait, it's optimism, being able to solve problems. And if the problem can't be fixed, just relax and forget about it. At the first signs of someone's stress, a Brazilian often says **Fique tranqüilo** (*fee-kee kdang-kwee-loh*; Don't worry). It has a very calming effect.

If the bus takes off just as you arrive at the bus stop, **fique tranqüilo**: There'll be another one in ten minutes. And you can make friends while you wait.

Chapter 13

Ten Phrases That Make You Sound Like a Local

People often say that Brazilian Portuguese is lyrical. Following are some of the nuts and bolts of the language that help to give it its sound. Using these little words can make you sound really fluent in Portuguese!

Né?

Brazilians probably say **né** (neh) more often than any other word or term. It means “Right?” They stick it at the end of sentences all the time: **Você vai para o aeroporto amanhã, né?** (voh-seh vah-ee pah-dah ooh ah-eh-doh-poh-too ah-mahn-yah, neh; You’re going to the airport tomorrow, right?)

And you may also hear **né** in the middle of sentences, where it doesn’t really have any use or meaning: **Eu vi o meu amigo, né, e depois não lembro de mais nada** (eh-ooh vee ooh meh-ooh ah-mee-goh neh ee deh-poh-eez nah-ooh leh-m-bdoh jee mah-eez nah-dah; I saw my friend, right, and then I don’t remember anything else).

Né is the short way of saying **não é?** (nah-ooh eh; Literally: is it not?).

Tá

You know when you're listening to someone talking on the phone, and you hear them say, "Oh . . . Yeah . . . Right . . . Uh-huh . . ."? **Tá** (tah) is the Brazilian equivalent of these words. If someone's giving you directions on how to get somewhere, for example, you can repeat **Tá . . . Tá . . . Tá . . .** and it'll sound like you're understanding and recording into memory everything he's saying.

Tá is the short way of saying **Está** (eh-stah).

Ah é?

Ah é (ah eh) is one of a few ways to say "Really?" It's also another of those phone conversation fillers. You can use it either to say "Really?" with real interest in what the person's saying or as a way to show the speaker you haven't fallen asleep.

Então

Então (eh-tah-ooh; so/then) is a major conversation filler in Brazil. People often say **então** to change the subject to something more interesting when there's a lull in a conversation. It also can be used to simply say "so" or "then."

Sabe?

Here's a case where the translation and use of the word is exactly the same as in English. A Brazilian's saying **Sabe?** (sah-bee) is the equivalent of an American speaker's weaving the phrase *You know?* constantly throughout.

Imagine two people talking on the phone. Person A is telling a story to Person B. Person A says **Sabe?** about

every 20 seconds as he talks. What does Person B say? (See previous entries for clues): **Tá . . . Ah é? . . . Tá. . .**

Meio

Meio (*may-o*; sort of) is an easy term for you to practice and wow native speakers with. Just remember — the pronunciation sounds like *mayo* in English (yes, the short way of saying *mayonnaise*).

Use **meio** when you'd say “sort of”:

- ✓ **Ele é meio alto.** (*eh-lee eh may-oh ah-ooh-toh-ooh*; He's sort of tall.)
- ✓ **O vestido parece meio asiático.** (*ooh vehs-chee-doo pah-deh-see may-oh ah-zee-ah-chee-koh*; The dress looks sort of Asian.)

Ou seja/E tal

These two phrases are pure fillers. **Ou seja** (*ooh seh-zhah*) means “in other words” but is often used by speakers just to gather their thoughts for a few seconds. And **e tal** (*ee tah-ooh*) means “et cetera” or “and stuff like that” or “and everything.”

Here is a real example of **e tal** I found on Google in Brazilian Portuguese (www.google.com.br): **O livro é sobre dragões e tal** (*ooh leev-doh eh sob-dee drah-goh-eez ee tah-ooh*; The book is about dragons and stuff like that).

Cê Instead of Você

Here's an important one. People very often shorten **você** (*voh-seh*; you) to **cê** when they speak. Instead of **Você entendeu?**, **Você vai agora?**, or **Você é de onde?** they say

- ✓ **Cê entendeu?** (seh en-ten-deh-ooh; Did you understand?)
- ✓ **Cê vai agora?** (seh vah-ee ah-goh-dah; Are you leaving now?)
- ✓ **Cê é de onde?** (seh eh jee ohn-jee; Where are you from?)

Pra Instead of Para a

Para (*pah-dah*) means “for” or “in order to.” Sometimes Brazilians pronounce **para** as **pra** (*pdah*).

- ✓ **Vai pra praia?** (*vah-ee pdah pdah-eeh-ah*; Are you going to the beach?)
- ✓ **Pra fazer o quê?** (*pdah fah-zeh ooh keh*; To do what?)

Tô instead of Estou

Estou (*eh-stoh*; I am) is often shortened to **tô**, both in spoken speech and in e-mails.

- ✓ **Tô com fome.** (*toh koh-oong foh-mee*; I’m hungry.)
- ✓ **Hoje tô feliz.** (*oh-zhee toh feh-leez*; Today I’m happy.)

Index

• A •

a/as, 21
A gente se vê., 58
a, pronunciation of, 15
ã, pronunciation of, 15–16
A que horas . . . ?, 44, 173
abacaxi, 57, 86
abóbora, 104
abobrinha, 87
abril, 46
abrir, 30
academia, 128
açai na tigela com granola, 89
acarajé, 88
accommodations
 hotels, 167–171
 renting an apartment, 165–167
aceita, 92
aceitamos, 92
Acha . . . ?, 120
acho, 123
action verbs, 23
açúcar, 74, 85
Adeus, 58
adjectives, 20–21, 67–68
adoçante, 103
advogado, 11
African languages, 7
agência de viagens, 50
agora, 27, 123
agosto, 47
água, 35
Ah é?, 192
ainda, 185
ajuda, 15
alcatra, 90
além de, 32
alface, 87
alho, 74
ali, 162
almoço, 81
alphabet, 7, 8–9
alto, 67
amanhã, 46
amarelo, 21, 98
ambulância, 184
amendoim, 122

americano, 63
amigo, 15, 20, 105
o amor, 48
anéis, 102
anestesia, 185
answering the phone, 133
antes, 161
-ão (suffix), 10
aparelho de barbear, 104
apartamento, 166
apartment, renting an, 165–167
apelido, 55
apresentar, 58
aqui, 27, 162
-ar verbs, 24, 25–26, 27, 29
areia, 121
arroba, 144
artesanato, 101
articles, 21–22
artigos de roupa, 99
assado, 84
assim, 182
assistir, 120
até, 32, 57–58, 161
atendente, 96
ATMs, 50–51
atuar, 14
atum, 105
aves, 105
avó, 76
avô, 76
axé, 15
azeite de oliva, 87
azul, 98

• B •

bagagens, 36
baiano, 64
bairro, 159
o baixo, 67, 115
banco, 50
banheiro, 22, 166
banks, 50–51
barato, 49, 68
barbeque, Brazilian, 89–90
barco, 21
bares, 110

barraca, 121
barro, 102
basquete, 127
batatas, 104
o bateria, 115
beach, at the, 120–125
beber, 86
bebidas, 83
beira-mar, 125, 160
bem mais perto, 164
o berimbau, 101, 115
berinjela, 104
bermudas, 121
beterraba, 87
bijuteria, 102
biologia, 11
um biquíni, 102
blusa, 97
Boa noite, 56
boa sorte, 4
Boa tarde, 56
boate, 16
boates, 110
body, parts of the, 183–184
bolo de laranja, 90
bolo de limão, 90
bolsa, 178
bom, 68, 120
Bom apetite!, 81
Bom dia, 56
bonita, 20
boteco, 82
branco, 98
Brasil, 13, 20
Brazil, population of, 1
Brazilian barbeque, 89–90
Brazilian Portuguese, 1–2, 6–7
brincos, 102
brócolis, 104
bruxa, 15
buggy, 128
burro, 13
buses, taking, 150

• C •

c-cedilha, 10
c, pronunciation of, 10
Cabral, Pedro Álvares, 6
cachorros, 21
cada, 93
cadeira, 167
cadeira de praia, 122
café, 10, 85
café da manhã, 81
cafezinho, 91

caipifruta, 85
caipirinha, 85
caixa automático, 50
calça jeans, 97
calçadão, 125
calças, 97
calor, 75
cama, 167
camarões, 105
uma caminhada, 125
caminhar, 14
caminho, 126
camisa, 97
camiseta, 97
uma camiseta de um time de futebol, 102
Canadá, 47
caneta, 93, 142
canga, 121
uma canga com a bandeira brasileira, 102
cantar, 23
car rentals, 152–154
caranguejo, 105
cardápio, 82
carioca, 64
caríssimo, 106
Carnaval, 117
carne, 74
carne moída, 105
caro, 67, 93, 106
carta, 13
cartão, 92
cartão de banco, 50
cartão de crédito, 36, 50
carteira, 178
carteira da habilitação, 154
cartões internacionais, 50
casa, 10, 20, 103, 166
casada, 70
casal, 60
caseiro, 103
o cavaquinho, 115
Cê, 193–194
cebola, 74, 87
cedo, 44, 173
cem, 13, 40
cenoura, 87
um centavo, 49
centígrados, 53
centimeters, 53
centímetro, 53
centro comercial, 160
centro da cidade, 159
centro histórico, 159
cerâmica, 102

- cerveja**, 85
chá, 85
 changing money, 51–52
chantily, 91
chapéu, 97
chato, 68
checar, 148
cheques de viagem, 50
chinelos, 121
chique, 106
chiquíssimo, 106
chope, 85
chover, 75
churrascaria, 89
chuva, 6, 75
cinco, 40
cinema, 110
cinquenta, 40
cinto, 97
 cities, navigating, 159–161
claro, 98
clima, 73
 clothing
 color of, 98
 sizes of, 97–98
 trying on, 99–101
 types of, 97
club, 10
coco, 88
coentro, 104
coisas, 96
coisas congeladas, 103
colares, 102
colher, 79
colocar, 182
 colors, 98
com, 32
Com certeza!, 190
uma comédia, 120
comer, 30
comida, 20
 commands, 35
como?, 62
Como é . . . ?, 69
companhia, 12
 comparisons, 106
comprido, 68
computador, 7, 142
 computers, 142–144
 condiments, 87
conferência, 143
conheço, 157
 conjugation
 about, 24–25
 future tense, 28–29
 past tense, 27–28
 present tense, 25–27
 of regular and irregular verbs,
 29–31
 connector words, 32–33
 consonants, pronunciation of,
 9–15
consulado, 178
consumação mínima, 113
conta, 92
a conta, 92
 contact information,
 communicating, 76–77
 contractions, 33–34
conversar, 126
cooper, 127
copo, 79
coração, 13
coração de frango, 90
cordeiro, 90
correr, 126
cortes de carne, 105
 counting, 39–41
 countries, 63
couve, 104
coxa de frango, 90
coxinha, 89
cozida, 84
cozinha, 33, 166
cozinhar, 24
creme dental, 104
crianças, 122
a cuíca, 115
Cuidado!, 175
cupuaçu, 86
 currency, 49–50
curto, 68
- D •
- d*, pronunciation of, 10–11
dançar, 10, 116
dar, 185
data, 10
 dates, 47–48
 days of the week, 44–46
de, 11, 32, 101
de manhãzinha, 148
de noite, 114
de novo, 57
decisão, 7
dedos, 14, 16
dele/dela/deles/delas, 37–38
delegacia, 178
demais, 98–99
a dengue, 180
dentro, 82

depois, 161
desde, 32
 dessert, ordering, 90–91
desses, 101
devagar, 126, 137
devolução, 154
dez, 40
dezembro, 47
dezenove, 40
dezeses, 40
dezesete, 40
dezoito, 40
dia, 42
dias de semana, 44–46
difícil, 68
difficuldade, 16
o dinheiro, 34, 48, 96
 dining, 79–81. *See also*
 restaurants
 directions
 asking, 154–156, 163–164
 understanding, 157–159
direita, 41
 distances, measuring, 53
divertido, 22, 68
do/da/dos/das (contraction), 34
do lado, 157
 doctor, going to the, 180–181,
 184
dois, 39
domingo, 45
dor, 180
doze, 40
 drinks, ordering, 85–86
duzentos, 41

• E •

e, 32
é, 23
 e-mail, 77, 143–144
e-mail, 7, 143
e meia, 42
É mesmo?, 189
e, pronunciation of, 16
ê, pronunciation of, 16
e quinze, 43
E tal, 193
economia, 7
ele/ela/eles/elas, 22–23, 25
elefante, 16
em, 47
embora, 32
 emergencies
 basic terms for, 175
 legal problems, 185–186

 medical, 179–185
 robbed, getting, 176–179
emocionados, 152
 English language, 7
Então, 192
entrada, 113
entradas, 81, 83
enviar, 143
–er verbs, 24–25, 26, 28, 30
–errimo/a (suffix), 106
escalada em rocha, 128
escova dental, 104
escritório, 142
escrivanhinha, 167
escuro, 98
Espanha, 12
especialidades da casa, 83
espera, 120
espetáculos, 110
um espeto de carne, 122
espinafre, 104
esquina, 157
estação, 74
estado, 11
estar, 30, 66, 70–71
estou, 101, 194
Estou com vontade . . ., 120
estudar, 23
eu, 22
eventos culturais, 110
evolução, 10
 exchange rate, 49
exercício, 125
experimentar, 99
experimento, 7
extra grande (GG) (size), 97

• F •

faca, 79
fácil, 68
Fala sério!, 187
falar, 24, 71–73
 family relationships, 75–76
famoso, 152
farmácias, 96
farofa, 89
fator . . ., 123
fazer, 26–27
fazer snorkeling/mergulho, 128
fazer trilha, 126
feijão, 104
feijoadada, 88, 104
feiras, 45, 95, 96
feirinha, 104
feirinhas, 103

feito à mão, 103
 feminine nouns, 20
festas, 110
fevereiro, 46
ficar tranqüila, 164
fila, 120
filha, 76
filho, 76
filmes, 119
Fique com Deus, 58
Fique tranqüilo, 190
fitas de Bonfim, 101–102
flan, 90
o flauta, 115
flora, 21
fogão, 166
Fogo!, 175
foi, 69
foi por isso, 93
 food, ordering, 82–84
 food, talking about, 80, 81
fora, 82
 foreign languages, 72
forte, 14
frainha, 90
fralda, 104
fraldinha, 90
França, 10
frango com osso, 105
frango sem osso, 105
freios, 153
frescobol, 121
 friends, making, 113–114
frio, 73, 75
frito, 84
frutas, 103
frutos do mar, 105
futebol, 122
 future tense, 28–29

• G •

g, pronunciation of, 11
galeria de arte, 159
 galleries, 118
garçom/garçonete, 82
garfo, 79
garota, 22
gasolina, 153–154
gato, 11
gaúcho, 64
geladeira, 166
gelo, 12, 80, 85, 182
 gender, 20

gente, 11
gente boa, 64
goiaba, 86
 going out, 110–113
 goodbye, saying, 57–58, 133
gordo, 68
gorjeta, 92
gostar, 14, 101
gosto, 101
gostoso, 20
governo, 11
Gramado, 17
 grammar
 commands, 35
 conjugation, 24–32
 connector words, 32–33
 contraction words, 33–34
 indirect objects, 34–35
 possessive phrases, 35–37
 in sentences, 19–24
grana, 49
grande, 20, 21, 68, 69
grande (G) (size), 97
grave, 182
 greetings, 56–57
grelhada, 84
a gripe, 180
Guaraná Antártica, 85
guarda-chuva, 75
guardanapo, 79
 guesthouses, 167
o guitarra, 115

• H •

h, pronunciation of, 11–12
há quanto tempo é . . . ?, 141
hambúrgueres, 82
 . . . **hein?**, 173
 hello, saying, 56–57
 help, asking for, 176–177
 “here,” 162
hip-hop, 10
hoje, 46
hoje à noite, 44
homem, 13, 20, 22
honesto, 11
hora, 11
hospitais, 184
 hotels
 asking about, 167–169
 making reservations at,
 169–170
 registering at, 170–171

• I •

i, pronunciation of, 16
igreja, 160
ilha, 69
imagina!, 189
imprimir, 142
inchar, 182
incluído, 93
 indirect objects, 34–35
informação, 16
inglês, 16
inseto, 182
inteligente, 21
 Internet, using the, 143–144
 introductions, 58–59
inverno, 73
 inviting someone, 110–111
iogurte, 91
ir, 28, 31
ir de barco, 128
ir de bicicleta, 128
ir de táxi, 164
ir dormir, 173
 –**ir** verbs, 24–25, 26, 28, 30
irmã, 70, 75
irmão, 75
 –**ísimo/a** (suffix), 106
I.V.A., 92

• J •

j, pronunciation of, 12
já, 182
janeiro, 46
janela, 12, 166
jangada, 128
jantar, 81
jardim, 160, 166
joelho, 12
Jorge, 12
jovem, 68
julho, 12, 46
junho, 46

• K •

kilograms, 53
 kilometers, 53

• L •

l, pronunciation of, 12
lá, 162
ladrão, 178

lanchonete, 82
 languages, foreign, 72
laptop, 10
laranja, 86, 98
latas de legumes, 103
 Latin language, 6, 7
legal, 70
 legal problems, 185–186
legumes, 104
legumes e verduras, 103
 leisure
 at the beach, 120–125
 Carnaval, 117
 falling in love, 128–130
 galleries and museums, 118
 going out, 110–113
 inviting someone, 110–111
 making friends, 113–114
 movies, 119–120
 musical culture, 114–117
 soccer, 127–128
 walking and hiking, 125–126
leite, 74, 85
lembranças, 101
lençóis, 167
 length, measuring, 53
lésbicas e simpatizantes, 113
levantar pesos, 128
liberdade, 7, 11
líder, 12
ligar para, 178
limão, 80, 88
limpo, 20
lindo, 20
Lindo maravilhoso!, 188–189
língua, 55
lingüiça, 90
a linha, 136
 liters, 53
litro, 53
livrarias, 96
livro, 16, 22
livros, 122
lixo, 15
logo, 161
loja, 12, 96, 105
uma loja na rua, 95
lojas de CDs, 96
lojas de roupas, 96
lombo, 90
longe, 62, 163
longe demais, 164
 love, falling in, 128–130
lula, 105
luz, 166

• *M* •

m, pronunciation of, 12–13
má sorte, 102
maçã, 16
madeira, 102
mãe, 24
magro, 68
maio, 46
maionese, 74
mais barato, 96, 103
mais perto, 164
mais tarde, 137
mamão, 86
mandioca frita, 89
manga, 86
manteiga, 74
mar, 160
Maracanã, 16
maracujá, 86
maravilhoso, 12
março, 46
marido, 70, 76
 markets, 103–105
marrom, 98
mas, 32
 masculine nouns, 20
massas, 104
mau, 68
me, 34, 35
Me ajuda!, 175
Me dá . . . ?, 52
 meals, 81
 measurements, 52–53
 medical emergencies, 179–185
médio (M) (size), 97
medo, 12
 meetings, planning, 142–143
meia-noite, 43
meias, 97
Meio, 193
meio-dia, 43
mel, 12
melancia, 86
melhor, 103, 106
memorizar, 57
menos de, 173
mercados, 101
mesa, 22, 167
mesmo se, 32
 metric system, 52–53
meu/minha/meus/minhas, 35–36
mil, 12, 41
um milhão, 41
milho, 87

mineiro, 64
modelo, 11
moeda, 49
molho, 74
molho de pimenta, 74
 money, 48–52
 month names, 46–47
moqueca, 88
morar, 29
morro, 160
motocicleta, 14
motor, 153
 movies, going to the, 119–120
mozzarella de búfala, 87
muito, 69
muito longe/perto, 163
mulher, 20, 76
mundo, 62
museu, 159
 museums, 118
música ao vivo, 109
música brasileira, 102
 musical culture, 114–117

• *N* •

n, pronunciation of, 12–13
na semana que vem, 46
 names, personal, 59–61
namorar, 128–129
não, 12, 16
Não entendi, 56
não está, 136
não se encontra, 136
Não tem problema, 52
naquela, 157
natação, 127
Natal, 12
 nationalities, 63
Né?, 191
neta, 76
neto, 76
no fim de semana, 46
no mês que vem, 46
no momento, 137
no/na (preposition), 45–47
no/na/nos/nas (contraction), 33–34
noite, 44
nome, 34, 170
nono, 41
norte-americano, 63
nós, 23
nosso/nossa/nossos/nossas, 35–36
notas, 52

notebook, 142
notícia, 14
 nouns, 20
nove, 40
novecientos, 41
novembro, 47
noventa, 40
 numerals
 counting, 39–41
 for dates, 47–48
 for measurements, 52
 for money, 48–52
 for month names, 46–47
 ordinal numbers, 41–42
 for time, 42–44
 for weekdays, 44–46
número, 157, 178
números, 107
nunca, 102
nuvens, 75

• 0 •

o melhor, 106
o/os, 21
 o, pronunciation of, 16
 ô, pronunciation of, 16
o quê?, 61
O que quer dizer . . . ?, 61
O que você faz?, 141
 objects, indirect, 34–35
 occupations, 140
óculos de sol, 121
Oi, 56
Oi?, 56
oitavo, 41
oitenta, 40
oito, 40
oitocentos, 41
Olá, 56
óleo, 74
olho inchado, 182
olhos, 14
onda, 17
onde, 61, 154–155
ônibus, 17, 157
ontem, 17
onze, 40
opções, 148
opinião, 105
 opinions, expressing, 105–106
 ordinal numbers, 41–42
Ótimo, 123
ou, 17
Ou seja, 193
 outdoor markets, 104–105

outono, 74
outubro, 47

• p •

padaria, 82
pagar, 107
país de origem, 170
palavra, 8
palha, 102
palhaço, 12
palmito, 87
o pandeiro, 115
pão, 80
pão de queijo, 88
papel higiênico, 103
para, 32, 69, 194
Pará, 37
pára-brisa, 153
para ti, 123
parada, 157
parece, 164
parque, 159
passa, 157
passado, 27
passaporte, 14
 past tense, 27–28, 137–138
paulista, 64
paulistano, 64
o paxixi, 115
 paying, 106–108
pedir, 11, 83
pedra, 102
peito de frango, 90
peixe, 105
pelo/pela/pelos/pelas
 (contraction), 34
pensar, 126
pepino, 104
pequeno, 21, 68
pequeno (P) (size), 97
perguntas, 123
 permanent qualities, using **ser**
 to describe, 66–70
 personal names, 59–61
pertinho, 152, 163
perto, 163
pescadores, 122
pessoa, 22
Petrobrás, 37
 pharmacies, 180–182
 phone, talking on the
 answering, 133
 making a call, 133–135
 saying goodbye, 133

- useful phrases for, 131–132
 using past tense when, 137–138
- o piano**, 115
- picada**, 182
- picanha**, 90
- picante**, 74
- picolé**, 122
- pimenta**, 74, 80
- pimenta do reino**, 80
- uma pintura**, 102
- pipoca**, 120
- piscina**, 166
- pizza doce**, 91
- place-setting terms, 79
- plane reservations, 146–149
- planejar**, 143
- planos**, 36
- plurals, forming, 21
- pó de guaraná**, 102
- pode**, 164
- Poderia me comunicar com . . .**, 135
- Poderia repetir, por favor?**, 56
- Poderia ser . . .**, 182
- Pois não?**, 190
- police, reporting a problem to the, 178–179
- polícia local**, 178
- polvo**, 105
- ponte**, 160
- ponto**, 144
- por**, 32
- por gentileza**, 135
- por quê?**, 61
- uma porção**, 93
- porque**, 32
- porta**, 13, 166
- o português**, 7, 8
- Portuguese language. *See also* Brazilian Portuguese
- about, 5, 6
- history of, 6
- as world language, 1
- written form, 6
- possessives, 35–37
- postos de gasolina**, 154
- um pouco**, 1
- Pra**, 194
- . . . pra caramba**, 188
- praça**, 159
- praças de alimentação**, 96
- praias**, 22, 120–121
- prancha de surf**, 122
- prato**, 79
- prato fundo**, 79
- pratos feitos**, 82
- pratos principais**, 83
- preço**, 49
- present tense, 25–27
- presidente**, 7
- preto**, 98
- prices, 49–50
- prima**, 76
- primavera**, 74
- primeiro**, 41
- primo**, 76
- produtos de limpeza**, 103
- produtos dos índios**, 102
- professor**, 34
- promoção**, 10
- pronouns, 22–23
- pronto**, 83
- a pronúncia**, 8
- pronunciation
- about, 5–6
- of alphabet, 8–9
- of consonants, 9–15
- regional differences in, 5
- of vowels, 15–17
- protetor solar**, 121
- provar**, 100

• Q •

- q*, pronunciation of, 13
- qual?**, 62
- quando**, 61, 161
- quanto**, 61
- quarenta**, 40
- quarta-feira**, 45
- quarteirão**, 159
- quarto**, 166
- quarto** (fourth), 41
- quarto** (room), 20
- quatorze**, 40
- quatro**, 40
- quatrocentos**, 41
- que**, 32
- Que saudade!**, 187
- quebrada**, 185
- queijo**, 74, 87
- queijo coalho**, 122
- quem?**, 61
- Quem fala?**, 135
- quente**, 75
- Quer levar?**, 100
- question words, 61–62
- questions, asking, 24
- quilo**, 13, 53
- quilometragem livre**, 154
- quilômetro**, 13, 53

quinhentos, 41
 quinta-feira, 45
 quinto, 41
 quinze, 40

• R •

r, pronunciation of, 13–14
uma radiografia, 184
rap, 10
rápido, 126
Rápido!, 175
o real, 49
recibo, 35
redes, 101
regime, 123
 relatives, 75–76
relaxar, 126
relógio, 97, 178
renda, 103
repolho, 104
 reservations
 hotel, 169–170
 plane, 146–149
resfriado, 180
responder, 142
ressaca, 180
restaurante, 82
restaurante por quilo, 82
 restaurants
 about, 81–82
 condiments in, 87
 desserts in, 90–91
 eating Brazilian barbeque in, 89–90
 main course in, 88–89
 ordering drinks at, 85–86
 ordering food at, 82–84
 paying the bill in, 91–93
 salads in, 86–87
retirada, 154
retirar, 50
retornando, 148
retornar, 148
reunião, 143
revistas, 103
rio, 159
 robbed, getting, 176–179
Roberto, 13
rock, 10
rodas, 153
rodoviária, 35
 Romance languages, 1, 6
Romeu e Julieta, 91
rosa, 13, 98
roupas, 96

roxo, 98
rua, 33, 159
rúcula, 87

• S •

s, pronunciation of, 14
sábado, 45
Sabe?, 192–193
Sabe . . . ?, 182
sabonete, 104
saia, 97
sal, 80
sala de emergência, 184
saladas, 83, 86
 salads, 86–87
salas de cinema, 96
salgados, 82
salmão, 105
salsinha, 104
sanduíches, 82, 83
a sanfona, 115
são, 23, 42
sapato, 22
sapatos, 97
saquinho, 182
Saúde!, 81
se, 32
se divertir, 125
segunda-feira, 45
segundo, 11, 41
segurança, 123
seguro, 51
sels, 40
seiscentos, 41
sem, 182
semente, 103
senhor, senhora, 23, 25, 60–61
sentar, 82
 sentences
 articles in, 21–22
 nouns in, 20
 pronouns in, 22–23
 structure of, 19
 verbs in, 23–24
seqüestros relâmpagos, 177
ser, 3, 31, 66–70
serviço, 10
o serviço, 93
serviço incluído, 92
sessenta, 40
sete, 40
setecentos, 41
setembro, 47
setenta, 40
sétimo, 41

seu/sua/seus/suas, 35–36
sexta-feira, 45
sexto, 41
shopping
 for clothes, 96–101
 comparison phrases for, 105–106
 for food, 104–105
 at the market, 103–105
 opinion phrases for, 105–106
 and paying, 106–108
 places for, 95–96
 for practical items, 103–104
 for souvenirs, 101–103
shopping, 7
shoppings, 95–96
show, 7
 sick, being, 180–181
simpático, 20
 sizes (clothes), 97–98
 sleep, talking about, 171–172
só que, 32
Só um momento, 135
sobre, 32
sobremesas, 81, 83
sobrenome, 170
 soccer, 127–128
Socorro!, 176
sofá, 167
sol, 75
sombrinha, 122
sopa, 83
sorvete, 91
sotaque, 8
Sou . . ., 135
 souvenirs, shopping for, 101–103
suco, 86
sujo, 20
sungas, 121
supermercados, 95, 103
surfe, 127

• T •

t, pronunciation of, 14
Tá, 192
Tá bom, 123
Tá certo., 99
Tá vendo?, 157
tamanho, 97
tamanho único (size), 97
também, 69
tanque de gasolina, 154
tarde, 44
Tatiana, 15
tatu, 6
taxa, 15
taxa de câmbio, 49
 taxis, 150–152
Tchau, 57
te, 34
teatro, 110
telefone, 34
 telephone numbers, 76–77. *See also* phone, talking on the
televisão, 167
tem que acordar, 173
tem que pegar . . ., 164
Temos . . . ?, 123
 temperature, 53
temperos, 104
temporada de chuva, 73
temporada seca, 73
 temporary qualities, using **estar** to describe, 70–71
tênis, 127
 tense(s)
 about, 24
 conjugating, 29–31
 future, 28–29
 past, 27–28
 present, 25–27
ter, 31
terça-feira, 45
terceiro, 41
terraço, 166
teto, 33
 “there,” 162
til (~), 15
time, 14
 time references, past tense, 138
 time, telling, 42–44
 tipping, 92
Tô, 194
toalha, 121
tomar, 86
tomate, 87
tomate seco, 87
tóxico, 15
 transportation
 asking directions, 154–156, 163–164
 buses, 150
 car rentals, 152–154
 “here” and “there,” 162
 navigating cities, 159–161
 plane reservations, 146–149
 taxis, 150–152
 understanding directions, 157–159
 useful phrases, 145–146

travesseiro, 167
 trazê-lo, 92
 trazer, 26–27
 três, 16, 40
 treze, 40
 trezentos, 41
 trilha, 126
 trinta, 40
 trocado, 51
 trocar, 50
 troco, 101
 tudo, 17
 Tudo bem/bom?, 57
 Tupi-Guarani language family, 6

• U •

u, pronunciation of, 16
 Ubatuba, 6
 um, 39
 Um beijo! (Um abraço!), 189
 um pouco, 1
 um/uma, 22
 a umidade, 75
 úmido, 75
 uns, 152
 uns/umas, 22
 urso, 17
 útil, 17
 Uva-Chuva, 6

• V •

vaga, 148
 vai, 157
 vai (he goes), 23
 vai ser, 148
 Vai ter que . . . ?, 185
 vamos, 120
 Vamos!, 175
 velho, 68
 vendendo, 101
 verão, 73
 verbs
 –ar, 24, 25–26, 27, 29
 –er, 24–25, 26, 28, 30
 –ir, 24–25, 26, 28, 30
 action, 23
 conjugation of, 29–31
 in sentences, 23–24

verde, 89, 98
 verduras, 104
 vermelho, 23, 98
 vestido, 97
 vez, 152
 viajar, 28–29
 vidro, 103
 vinagre, 87
 vinagrete, 87
 vinho, 85
 vinte, 40
 o violão, 114
 o violino, 115
 visitar, 69
 vizinho, 60
 você, 22, 25, 193
 você deveria, 173
 Você gosa de . . . ?, 113–114
 volante, 153
 vôlei, 122, 127
 volume, measuring, 53
 vou, 92
 vowels, pronunciation of, 15–17

• W •

w, pronunciation of, 14
 walking and hiking, 125–126
 Wanderlei, 14
 Wanessa, 14
 weather, the, 73–75
 week, days of the, 44–46
 weight, measuring, 53
 “Where are you from?”, 62–65
 “Where is/are”?, 154–156
 work
 talking about, 138–142
 using computers at, 142–144
 written Portuguese, 6

• X •

x, pronunciation of, 15
 X-salada, 89
 xampu, 104

• Y •

years, 48